Handbook



PEUGEOT 308

PEUGEOT

On-line user guide

You can find your user guide on the PEUGEOT website, under the heading "Personal space".

This personal space offers advice and other useful information for the care and maintenance of your vehicle.

Referring to the user guide on-line also gives you access to the latest information available, easily identified by the bookmarks, associated with this pictogram:



Please note the following point:
The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories which are not recommended by PEUGEOT may result in a failure of your vehicle's electronic system. Please note this specific warning. It is advisable to contact a PEUGEOT dealer to be shown the recommended equipment and accessories.

If the heading "Personal space" is not available on the public website for your country, you can find your user guide at the following address:
http://public.servicebox.peugeot.com

Select:
- the link in "Private customer access",
- the language,
- the model,
- the edition date appropriate for the date of registration of your vehicle.

You will find your user guide, presented in the same way as the paper version.

Thank you for choosing a 308, symbol of confidence, passion and inspiration.

This handbook has been designed to enable you to make the most of your 308 saloon or 308 SW.

On the first few pages, you will find a detailed summary, followed by a quick reference guide intended to make it easier for you to become familiar with your vehicle.

All of the details specific to your 308, comfort, safety, driving, are then presented in this handbook, to increase your appreciation of the vehicle and make the most of it.

At the end of the handbook, a visual search enables you to identify the special features in relation to the outline illustration of your vehicle, saloon or SW.

Your vehicle is fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.

Key

This key will enable you to distinguish the special features of your vehicle:


308 saloon


308 SW with bench rear seat


308 SW with individual rear seats

Key

Warning:
this symbol marks warnings which it is essential to observe for your own safety, for the safety of others or to avoid any risk of damaging your vehicle.

Information:
this symbol draws your attention to additional information for better use of your vehicle.

Protection of the environment:
this symbol accompanies advice relating to protection of the environment.

Page reference:
this symbol invites you to refer to the pages which provide details of the function.

CONTENTS

FAMILIARISATION 4 ➔ 22

ECO-DRIVING 23 ➔ 24

1 INSTRUMENTS and CONTROLS 25 ➔ 44

Instrument panels 25
Warning and indicator lamps 29
Indicators 39
Instrument panel buttons 43

2 MULTIFUNCTION SCREENS 45 ➔ 60

Screens without audio equipment 45
Screens with audio equipment 47
Retractable colour screen (Peugeot Connect Navigation (RT6)) 52
Retractable colour screen (Peugeot Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D)) 54
Trip computer 57

3 COMFORT 61 ➔ 82

Ventilation 61
Heating 63
Manual air conditioning 63
Rear screen demist - defrost 65
Dual-zone digital air conditioning 66
Front seats 68
Rear seats 72
Seat modularity 78
Mirrors 80
Steering wheel adjustment 82

4 ACCESS 83 ➔ 98

Remote control key 83
Alarm 87
Electric windows 89
Doors 91
Boot 94
Panoramic sunroof 95
Fuel tank 96
Misfuel prevention (Diesel) 97

5 VISIBILITY 99 ➔ 109

Lighting controls 99
LED lamps 101
Daytime running lamps 101
Headlamp adjustment 103
Directional lighting 104
Wiper controls 105
Automatic rain sensitive wipers 107
Courtesy lamps 108
Interior mood lighting 109
Boot lamp 109

6 FITTINGS 110 ➔ 124

Interior fittings 110
Front armrest 113
Boot fittings 116

7 CHILD SAFETY 125 ➔ 136

Child seats 125
ISOFIX child seats 131
Child lock 136

8 SAFETY 137 ➔ 149

Direction indicators 137
Hazard warning lamps 137
Horn 137
Tyre under-inflation detection 138
Emergency or assistance call 139
Braking assistance systems 139
Trajectory control systems 140
Front seat belts 141
Airbags 146

9 DRIVING 150 ➔ 168

Parking brake 150
Manual gearbox 150
Gear shift indicator 151
Hill start assist 152
6-speed electronic gear control gearbox 153
Automatic gearbox 157
Stop & Start 160
Speed limiter 163
Cruise control 165
Parking sensors 167

10 CHECKS 169 ➔ 177

Bonnet 170
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 171
Petrol engines 172
Diesel engines 173
Checking levels 174
Checks 176

11 PRACTICAL INFORMATION 178 ➔ 218

Temporary puncture repair kit 178
Changing a wheel 187
Changing a bulb 194
Changing a fuse 201
Battery 207
Energy economy mode 210
Changing a wiper blade 211
Towing the vehicle 211
Towing a trailer 214
Very cold climate screen 215
Fitting roof bars 216
Accessories 217

12 TECHNICAL DATA 219 ➔ 242

Petrol engines 219
Petrol weights 222
Diesel engines 228
Diesel weights 231
Dimensions 240
Identification markings 241

AUDIO EQUIPMENT and TELEMATICS 243 ➔ 364

Emergency or assistance 243
Peugeot Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D) 247
Peugeot Connect Navigation (RT6) 291
Peugeot Connect Sound (RD5) 345

VISUAL SEARCH 365 ➔ 371

ALPHABETICAL INDEX 372 ➔ 376

EXTERIOR

Stop & Start system

This system puts the engine temporarily into standby during stops in the traffic (red lights, traffic jams, etc....). The engine restarts automatically as soon as you want to move off. The Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption, exhaust emissions and the noise level when stationary.

⏭ 160

Panoramic sunroof

This roof provides incomparable visibility and light in the passenger compartment.

⏭ 95



Directional lighting

This lighting automatically provides additional visibility when cornering.

⏭ 104

Temporary puncture repair kit

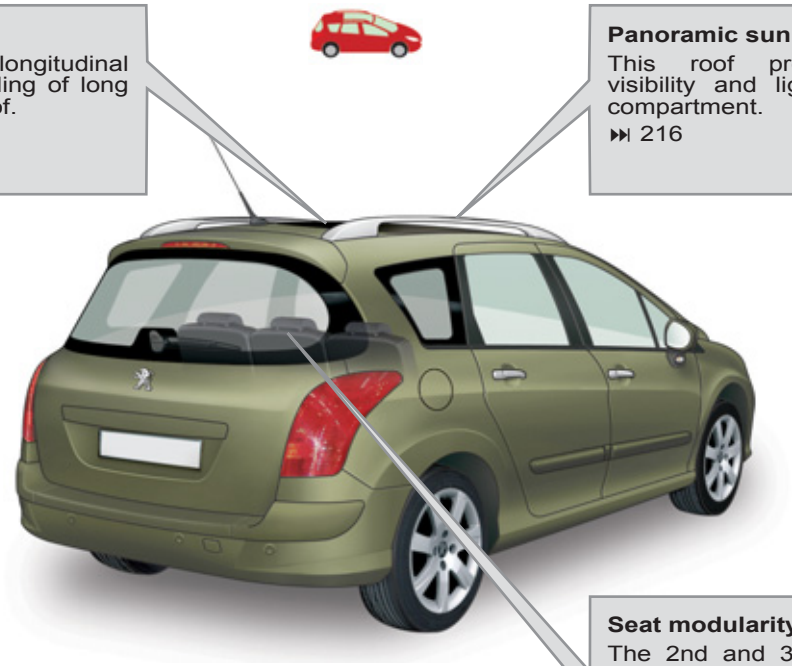
This kit is a complete system, consisting of a compressor and a sealant cartridge, for the temporary repair of a tyre.

⏭ 178

EXTERIOR

Roof bars
Transverse bars fitted on the longitudinal bars, these permit the loading of long and bulky objects on the roof.
⏭ 95

Panoramic sunroof
This roof provides incomparable visibility and light in the passenger compartment.
⏭ 216



Seat modularity
The 2nd and 3rd row individual rear seats can be arranged in various ways to provide different layout and loading configurations.
⏭ 78

ACCESS

Remote control key



A. Unfolding / Folding the key (press this button first).

Normal locking (press once; fixed lighting of the direction indicators).

or

Deadlocking the vehicle (press twice in succession; fixed lighting of the direction indicators).

⏭ 83

Unlocking the vehicle (rapid flashing of the direction indicators).

When a sensor detects a low level of light, remote switching on of the dipped beam headlamps and sidelamps makes your approach to the vehicle easier.

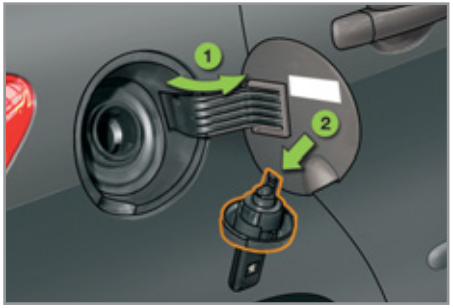
⏭ 103



In the same way, the passenger compartment lighting, such as the courtesy lamps, the front door sill lamps and the footwell lamps, comes on.

⏭ 109

Fuel tank



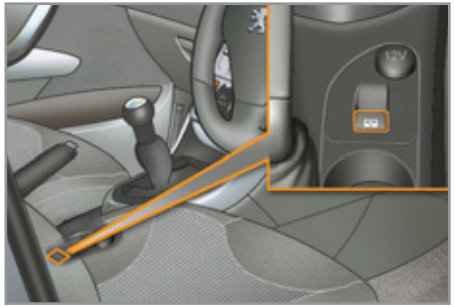
1. Opening the fuel filler flap.
2. Opening and hooking the fuel filler cap.

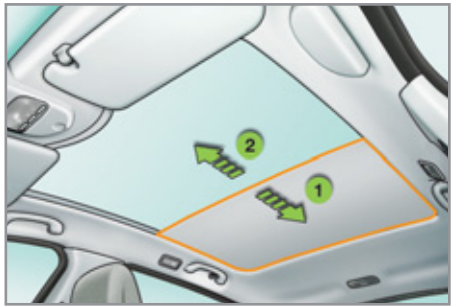
Capacity of the tank: approximately 60 litres.

⏭ 96

ACCESS

Panoramic sunroof



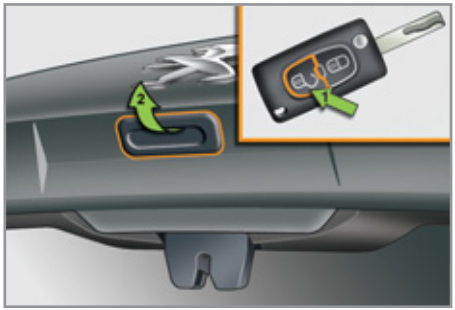


1. Opening the blind.
2. Closing the blind.

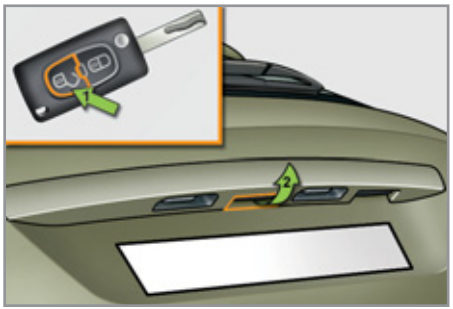
⏭ 95

Boot









1. Unlocking the vehicle.
2. Opening the boot.

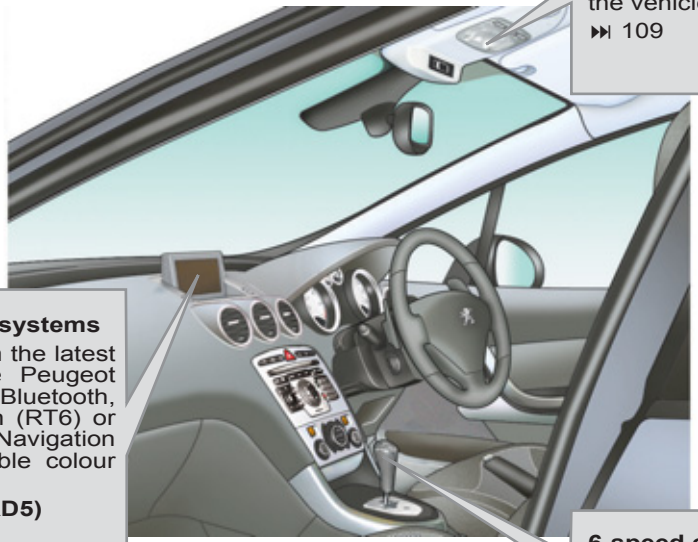
⏭ 94

INTERIOR

Interior mood lighting

This dimmed lighting of the passenger compartment improves visibility inside the vehicle when the light is poor.

⏭ 109



Audio and communication systems

This equipment benefits from the latest technology: MP3 compatible Peugeot Connect Sound (RD5), Bluetooth, Peugeot Connect Navigation (RT6) or Peugeot Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D) with 16/9 retractable colour screen, auxiliary sockets.

Peugeot Connect Sound (RD5)

⏭ 345

Peugeot Connect Navigation (RT6)

⏭ 291

Peugeot Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D)

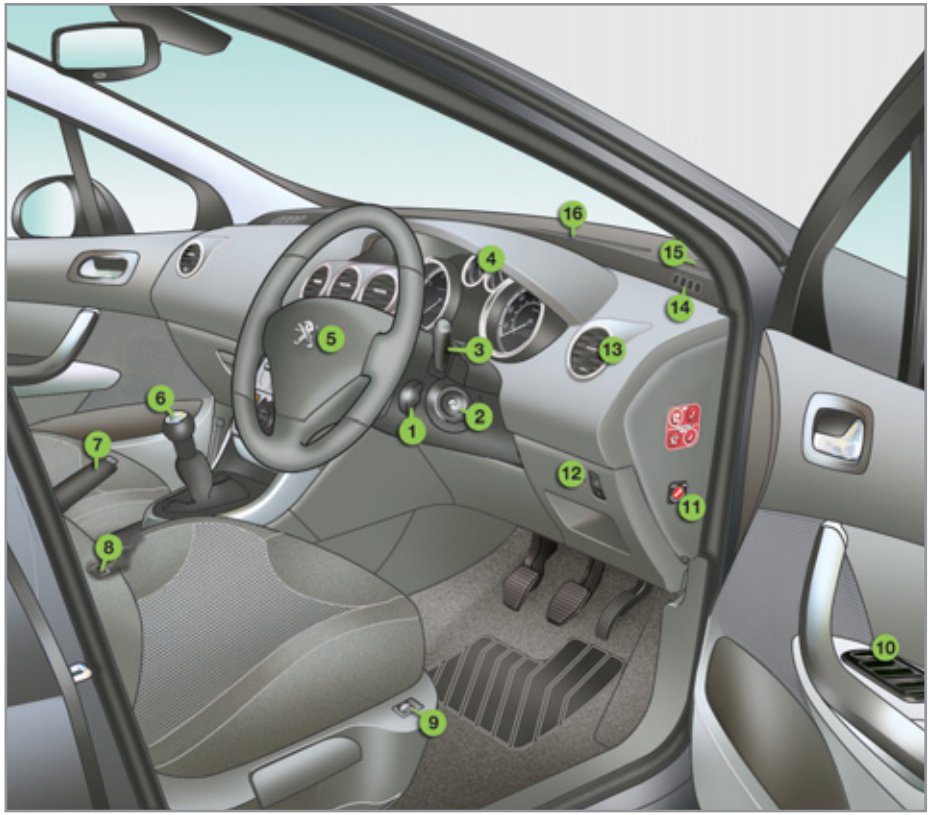
⏭ 247

6-speed electronic gear control gearbox

This system provides a fully automatic driving mode and a manual mode.

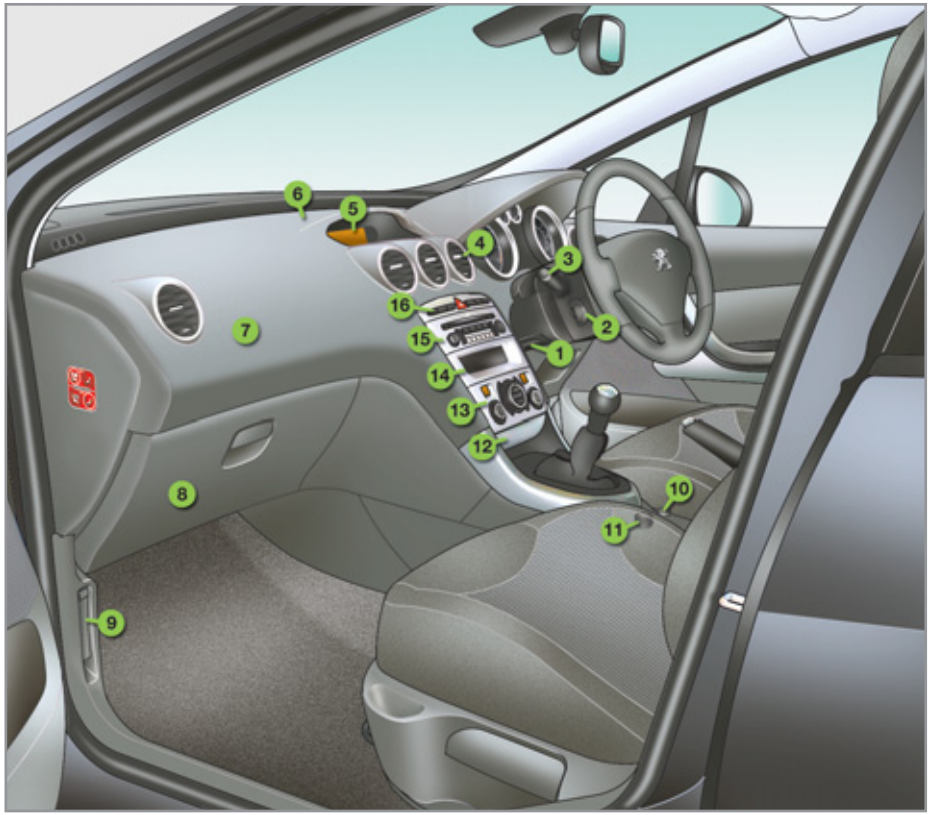
⏭ 153

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS



1. Audio and telematic system steering mounted controls.
2. Steering lock and ignition.
3. Wiper / screenwash / trip computer control stalk.
4. Instrument panel.
5. Driver's airbag.
   Horn.
6. Gear lever.
7. Parking brake lever.
8. Panoramic sunroof blind control.
9. Heated seat control.
10. Door mirror controls.
    Electric window controls.
11. Passenger's airbag deactivation switch.
12. Manual headlamp height adjustment.
    Stop & Start button.
13. Side adjustable air vent.
14. Front side window demisting vent.
15. Speaker (tweeter).
16. Windscreen demisting vent.

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS



1. Steering wheel adjustment control.
2. Cruise control / speed limiter switches.
3. Lighting and direction indicators control stalk.
4. Central adjustable air vents.
5. Multifunction screen.
6. Sunshine sensor.
7. Passenger's airbag.
8. Glove box / Audio/video sockets / Fusebox.
9. Bonnet release lever.
10. Storage compartment or control panel navigator associated with Peugeot Connect Media Naviagtion (NG4 3D).
11. 12 V accessory socket.
12. Front ashtray.
13. Heating / air conditioning controls.
14. Open storage.
15. Audio and telematics system.
16. Emergency call button.

    Alarm button.

    Central locking button.

    Hazard warning lamps button.

    Dynamic stability control (ESP/ ASR) button.

    Parking sensors button.

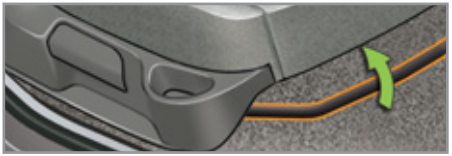
    PEUGEOT services button.

SITTING COMFORTABLY

Driver's seat

Forwards-backwards



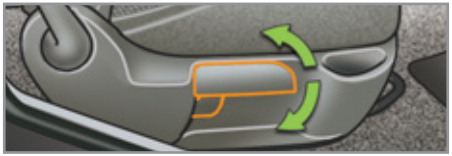




Height



Manual adjustment ⏭ 68



Electric adjustment ⏭ 69



Seat back angle



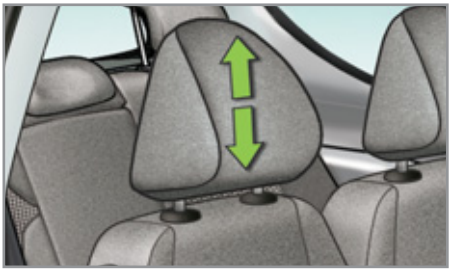




SITTING COMFORTABLY

Front seats

Head restraint height



Lumbar



⏭ 70

Other functions available...

Front passenger seat table position (SW).

Storing driving positions (driver's electric seat).

Heated seats.

Steering wheel adjustment

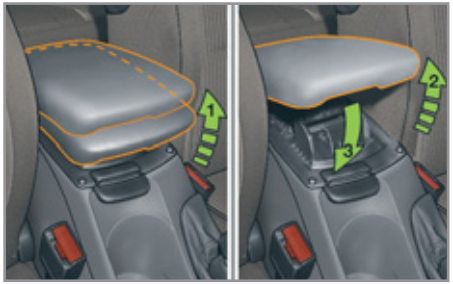


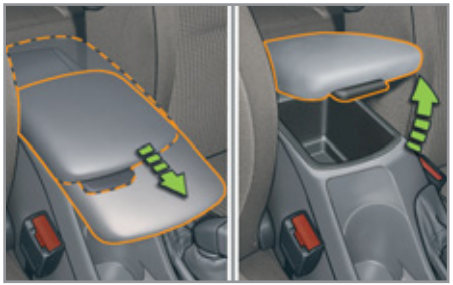
1. Release the adjustment mechanism.
2. Adjust for height and reach.
3. Lock the adjustment mechanism.

As a safety precaution, these operations must only be carried out when stationary.

⏭ 82

Front armrest





For your comfort, the height and longitudinal position of the front armrest can be adjusted.

It also has a storage compartment.

⏭ 113

SITTING COMFORTABLY

Door mirrors



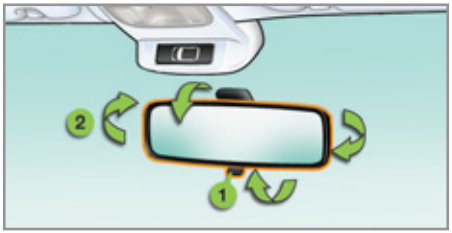
Adjustment

A. Selection of the mirror to be adjusted.
B. Adjustment of the position of the mirror in the four directions.
C. De-selection of the mirror.

⏭ 80

Other functions available...
Folding / Unfolding.
Automatic tilting of the mirror in reverse gear for parking.

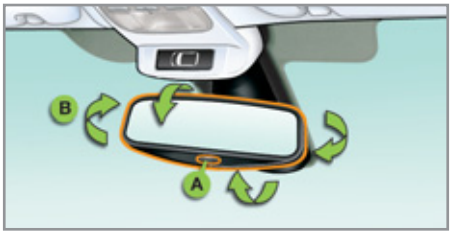
Rear view mirror



Manual day/night model

1. Selection of the "day" position of the mirror.
2. Mirror adjustment.

⏭ 82



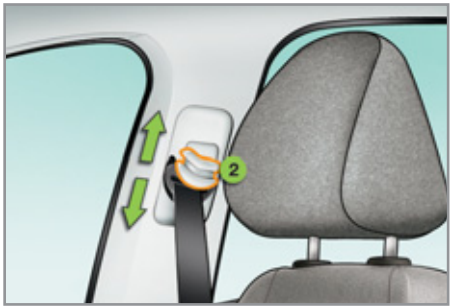
Automatic day/night model

A. Brightness sensor.
B. Mirror adjustment.

⏭ 82

Front seat belts



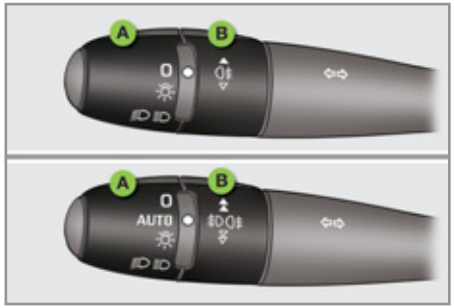


1. Fastening the buckle.
2. Height adjustment.

⏭ 141

SEEING CLEARLY

Lighting



Ring A

0 Lighting off.

AUTO Automatic illumination of headlamps.

Sidelamps.

Dipped / main beam headlamps.

Ring B

Rear foglamp.

or

Front and rear foglamps.

⏭ 99

Direction indicators



Raise or lower the lighting stalk passing the point of resistance; the corresponding direction indicators will flash for as long as the stalk remains in this position.

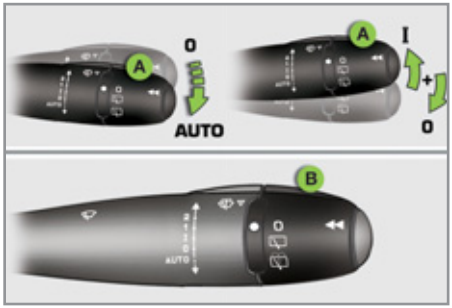
"Motorway" function

Raise or lower the lighting stalk once, without passing the point of resistance; the corresponding direction indicators will flash three times.

This function can be used at any speed, but it is particularly useful when changing lane on high-speed roads.

⏭ 137

Wipers



Stalk A: windscreen wipers

⏭ 105

Switching on "AUTO"

☞ Press the stalk down and release it.

Switching off "AUTO"

☞ Push the stalk up and return it to position **"0"**.

⏭ 107

Ring B: rear wiper

0 Park.

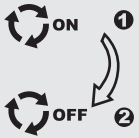
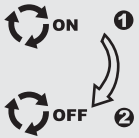
Intermittent wipe.

Wash-wipe.

⏭ 106

VENTILATION

Recommended interior settings

I require...	Heating or Manual Air Conditioning				
	Air distribution	Air flow	Air recirculation / Intake of outside air	Temperature	Manual A/C
HOT					—
COLD					ON
DEMISTING DEFROSTING					ON

Digital air conditioning: we recommend use of the fully automatic mode by pressing the **"AUTO"** button.

MONITORING

Instrument panel



A. With the ignition on, the fuel gauge needle should indicate the level of fuel remaining.

B. With the engine running, its associated low level warning lamp should go off.

C. With the ignition on, the oil level indicator should display that the level is OK or correct, depending on version, for a few seconds.

If the levels are not correct, top up the levels which are low.

⏭ 25

Warning lamps



1. With the ignition on, the orange and red warning lamps come on.

2. With the engine running, these warning lamps should go off.

If warning lamps remain on, refer to the page concerned.

⏭ 29, 33

Switch panel



Lighting of the indicator lamp indicates the status of the corresponding function.

A. Emergency call in progress.

⏭ 243

B. Deactivation of the alarm interior protection.

⏭ 87

C. Central locking.

⏭ 92

D. Deactivation of the ESP/ASR system.

⏭ 140

E. Deactivation of the front and rear parking sensors.

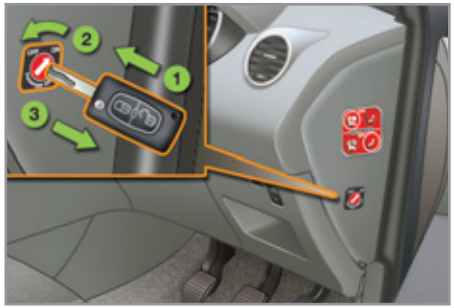
⏭ 168

F. Access to PEUGEOT services.

⏭ 243

PASSENGER SAFETY

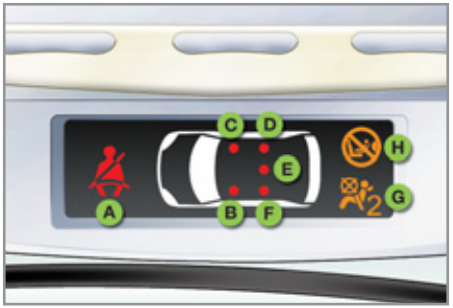
Passenger's front airbag



1. Insert the key.
2. Select the position:
   "OFF" (deactivation), with "rear facing" child seat,
   "ON" (activation), with front passenger or "forwards facing" child seat.
3. Remove the key keeping the switch in the new position.

⏭ 146

Seat belts and passenger's front airbag



A. Front and/or rear seat belts not fastened / unfastened warning lamp.
B. Front left seat belt warning lamp.
C. Front right seat belt warning lamp.
D. Rear right seat belt warning lamp*.
E. Rear centre seat belt warning lamp*.
F. Rear left seat belt warning lamp*.
G. Passenger's front airbag deactivated warning lamp.
H. Passenger's front airbag activated warning lamp.

* Only with individual rear seats on SW.

⏭ 142, 147

Electric child lock



Illumination of the indicator lamp indicates the status of the corresponding function.

A. Activation of the electric child lock.

⏭ 136

PASSENGER COMFORT

Operating the front passenger seat



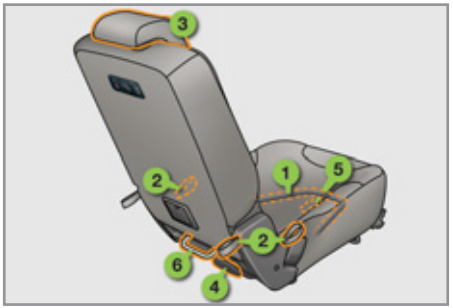
Table position

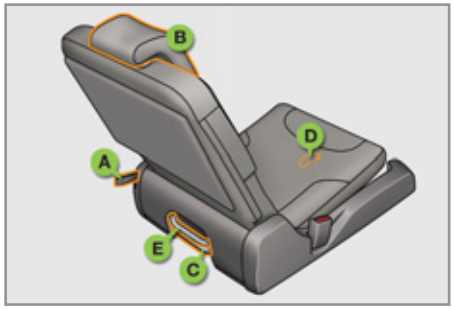
A. Partial table position.

B. Full table position.

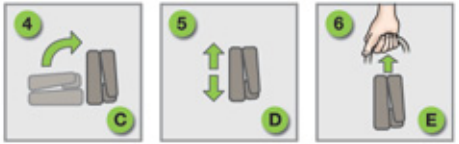
⏭ 70

Operating the rear seats









2nd row rear seats

1. Forwards-backwards adjustment.
2. Seat back angle adjustment / Table position.
3. Head restraint height adjustment.
4. Folding.
5. Removal / Installation.
6. Carrying.

⏭ 74

3rd row additional seats

A. Seat back angle adjustment / Table position.

B. Head restraint height adjustment.

C. Folding.

D. Removal / Installation.

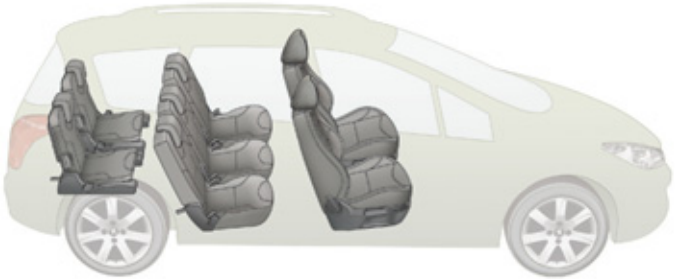
E. Carrying.

⏭ 76

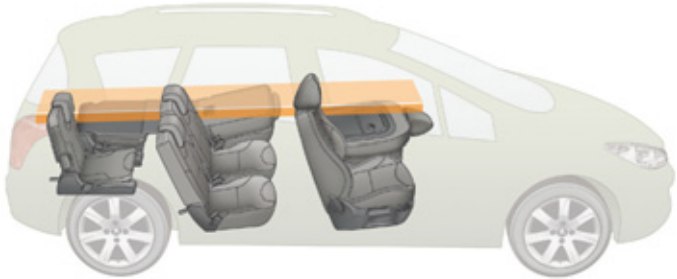
SEAT CONFIGURATION

A few examples of seat modularity

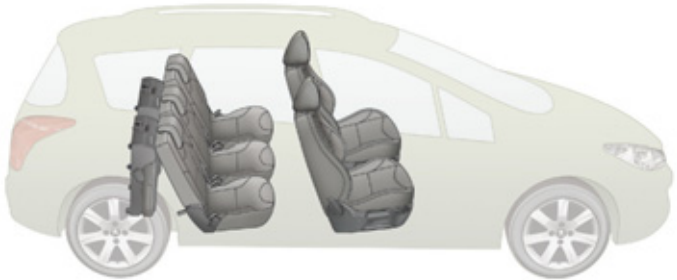
7 seats



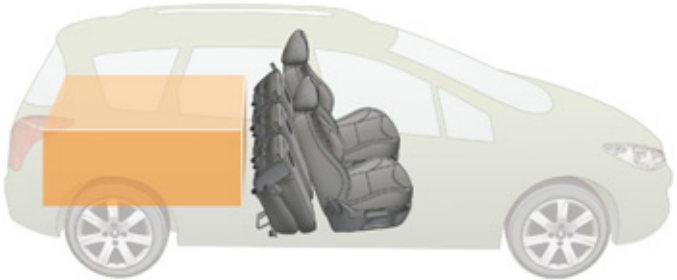
Transporting long objects



7 seats in 5 seat configuration with additional seats folded



Loading a large volume



⏭ 78

DRIVING SAFELY

Stop & Start

Going into engine STOP mode

ECO The **"ECO"** warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine automatically goes into standby:

- **with a manual gearbox:** at speeds below 12 mph (20 km/h), when you put the gear lever into neutral, and you release the clutch pedal,
- **with a 6-speed electronic gear control gearbox:** at speeds below 5 mph (8 km/h, when you press the brake pedal or when you put the gear lever in position **N**.

In some circumstances, STOP mode may not be available; the **"ECO"** warning lamp flashes for few seconds, then goes off.

i If you engage a gear without fully depressing the clutch pedal, the engine will not restart automatically. An alert message is displayed asking you to fully depress the clutch pedal.

⏭ 160

Going into engine START mode

ECO The **"ECO"** warning lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically:

- **with a manual gearbox:** when you **fully** depress the clutch pedal,
- **with a 6-speed electronic gear control gearbox:**
  - gear lever in position **A** or **M**, when you release the brake pedal,
  - or gear lever in position **N** and brake pedal released, when you change to position **A** or **M**,
  - or when you engage reverse.

In some circumstances START mode may be invoked automatically; the **"ECO"** warning lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

⏭ 161

Deactivation / Reactivation



You can deactivate the system at any time by pressing the **"ECO OFF"** button; the warning lamp in the button comes on.

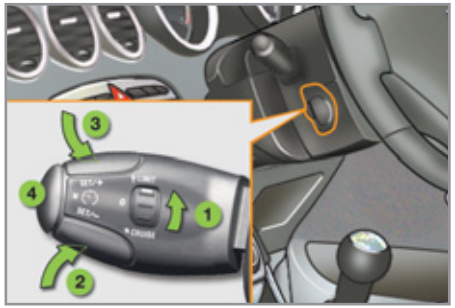
i The system is reactivated automatically at every new start using the key.

! Before refuelling or doing anything under the bonnet, you must switch off the ignition using the key.

⏭ 161

DRIVING SAFELY

Speed limiter "LIMIT"

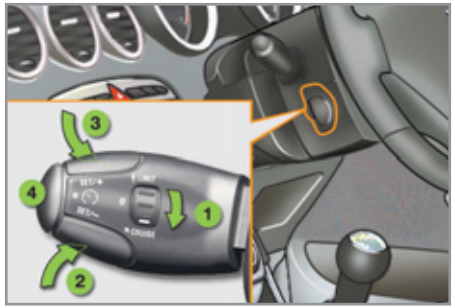


1. Limiter mode Selection / Off.
2. Decreasing the programmed value.
3. Increasing the programmed value.
4. Speed limiter On / Off.

The values must be set with the engine running.

⏭ 163

Cruise control "CRUISE"



1. Cruise control mode Selection / Off.
2. Programming a speed / Decreasing the programmed value.
3. Programming a speed / Increasing the programmed value.
4. Cruise control Off / Resume.

In order to be programmed or activated, the vehicle speed must be higher than 25 mph (40 km/h), with at least fourth gear engaged on the manual gearbox (second gear for the 6-speed electronic gear control or automatic gearbox).

⏭ 165

Display in the instrument panel



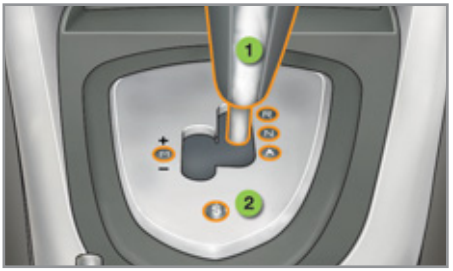
The cruise control or speed limiter mode appears in the instrument panel when it is selected.

Cruise control

Speed limiter

DRIVING SAFELY

6-speed electronic gear control gearbox





This 6-speed gearbox offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation or the pleasure of manual gear changing.

1. Gear lever.
2. Button **"S" (sport)**.
3. Steering wheel **"-"** paddle.
4. Steering wheel **"+"** paddle.

Display in the instrument panel



The gear or the driving mode selected appears in the instrument panel screen.

N: neutral.

R: reverse.

1 2 3 4 5 6: gears engaged.

AUTO: automatic mode.

S: Sport programme.

Moving off



- Select position **N** and press the brake pedal firmly while starting the engine.
- Engage first gear (position **A** or **M**) or reverse (position **R**) using the gear lever **1**.
- Release the parking brake.
- Take your foot off the brake pedal, then accelerate.

⏭ 153

ECO-DRIVING

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions.

Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently, change up without waiting and drive by changing up quite soon. If your vehicle has the system, the gear shift indicator invites you to change up; it is displayed in the instrument panel, follow its instructions.

With an automatic or electronic gearbox, stay in Drive **"D"** or Auto **"A"**, according to the type of gearbox, without pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal, and press the accelerator progressively. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions and also helps reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has cruise control, make use of the system at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

Control the use of your electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.

Above 30 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.

Remember to make use of equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof and window blinds...).

Switch off the air conditioning, unless it has automatic digital regulation, as soon as the desired temperature is attained.

Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls, if not automatic.

Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and front foglamps when the level of light does not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, if you avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game...), you will contribute towards limiting the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel.

Disconnect your portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the bottom of the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.

Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer...). Use a roof box in preference.

Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit your summer tyres.

Observe the recommendations on maintenance

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.

Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Don't forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter...) and observe the schedule of operations recommended by the manufacturer.

When refuelling, do not continue after the 3rd cut-off of the nozzle to avoid any overflow.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, it is only after the first 1 800 miles (3 000 kilometres) that you will see the fuel consumption settle down to a consistent average.

TYPE 1 INSTRUMENT PANEL



Dials

1. **Rev counter.**
   Indicates the speed of rotation of the engine (x 1000 rpm).
2. **Coolant temperature.**
   Indicates the temperature of the engine coolant (° Celsius).
3. **Fuel level.**
   Indicates the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank.
4. **Vehicle speed.**
   Indicates the current speed of the moving vehicle (mph or km/h).
5. **Screen.**
6. **Control button.**
   Recalls the service information.
   Resets the function to zero (trip distance recorder or service indicator).
7. **Instrument panel lighting button.**
   Adjusts the brightness of the lighting of the instruments and controls.

For more information, refer to the section on the button or function and its associated display.

Displays



A. **Speed limiter**
   (mph or km/h) or
   Cruise control.
B. **Gear shift indicator.**
C. **6-speed electronic gear control or automatic gearbox.**
D. **Trip distance recorder.**
   (miles or km)
E. **Service indicator**
   (miles or km) then,
   engine oil level indicator
   then
   distance recorder.
   (miles or km)
   These three functions are displayed in succession when the ignition is switched on.

TYPE 2 INSTRUMENT PANEL



Dials

1. **Rev counter.**
   Indicates the speed of rotation of the engine (x 1000 rpm).
2. **Coolant temperature.**
   Indicates the temperature of the engine coolant (° Celsius).
3. **Fuel level.**
   Indicates the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank.
4. **Vehicle speed.**
   Indicates the current speed of the moving vehicle (mph or km/h).
5. **Small screen.**
6. **Central screen.**
7. **Control button.**
   Starts a manual CHECK and recalls the service information.
   Resets the function to zero (trip distance recorder or service indicator).
8. **Instrument panel lighting button.**
   Adjusts the brightness of the lighting of the instruments and controls.

For more information, refer to the section on the button or function and its associated display.

Displays



A. **Trip distance recorder.**
(miles or km)

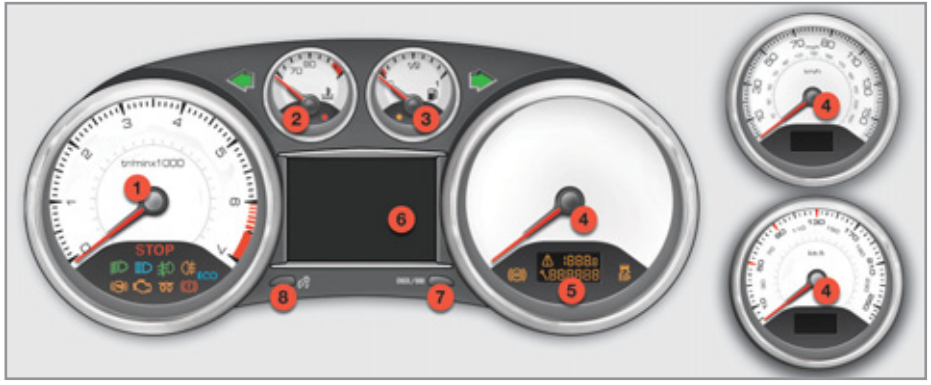
B. **Distance recorder.**
(miles or km)

C. **Engine oil level indicator, service indicator.**
(miles or km)
These two functions are displayed when the ignition is switched on, then disappear after a few seconds.

The following functions are displayed depending on the selection.

- **Warning lamps / CHECK.**
- **Tyre under-inflation detection.**
- **Speed limiter / Cruise control.**
- **Gear shift indicator.**
- **6-speed electronic gear control or automatic gearbox.**
- **Navigation - Guidance / Trip computer.**
- **Alert messages symbol.**

TYPE 3 INSTRUMENT PANEL WITH PEUGEOT CONNECT MEDIA NAVIGATION (NG4 3D)



Dials

1. **Rev counter.**
   Indicates the speed of rotation of the engine (x 1000 rpm).
2. **Coolant temperature.**
   Indicates the temperature of the engine coolant (° Celsius).
3. **Fuel level.**
   Indicates the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank.
4. **Vehicle speed.**
   Indicates the current speed of the moving vehicle (km/h or mph).
5. **Small screen.**
6. **Central screen.**
7. **Control button.**
   Starts a manual CHECK and recalls the service information.
   Resets the function to zero (trip distance recorder or service indicator).
8. **Instrument panel lighting button.**
   Adjusts the brightness of the lighting of the instruments and controls.

For more information, refer to the section on the button or function and its associated display.

Displays



A. **Trip distance recorder.**
(miles or km)

B. **Distance recorder.**
(miles or km).

C. **Engine oil level indicator, service indicator.**
(miles or km)
These two functions are displayed when the ignition is switched on, then disappear after a few seconds.

The following functions are displayed depending on the selection.

- **Warning lamps / CHECK.**
- **Tyre under-inflation detection.**
- **Speed limiter / Cruise control.**
- **Gear shift indicator.**
- **6-speed electronic gear control or automatic gearbox.**
- **Navigation - Guidance / Trip computer.**
- **Vehicle and screen parameter settings menus.**
- **Alert messages.**

Instrument panel navigator associated with the Peugeot Connect Media



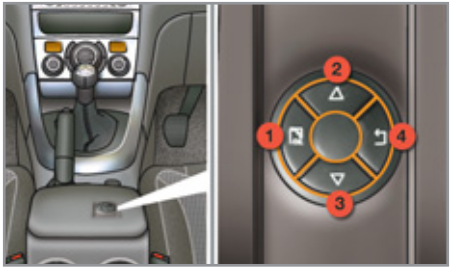
This group of buttons permits:

- **when stationary**, configuration of the vehicle's equipment and of the parameters of the central screen (languages, units...),
- **while driving**, scrolling of the active functions (trip computer, navigation...).

Controls

There are four buttons to control the large central instrument panel screen:

1. access the main menu, confirm the selection,
2. move up through the menu,
3. move down through the menu,
4. return to the previous screen, exit from the menu.



The main menu and its associated functions can only be accessed when stationary, via buttons **1** to **4**.

A message appears on the central screen above a certain speed threshold, indicating that the main menu cannot be displayed.

The trip computer displays can only be accessed while driving, via buttons **2** and **3** (refer to the "Trip computer" section).

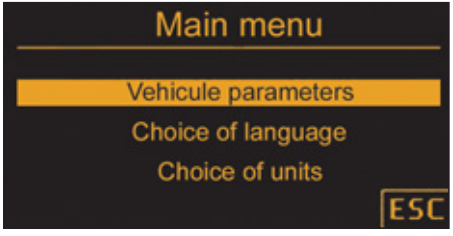
Main menu

☞ Press button **1** for access to the main menu and select one of the following functions:

- "Vehicle parameters",
- "Choice of language",
- "Choice of units".

☞ Press button **2** or **3** to move on the screen.

☞ Press button **1** again to confirm the selection.



Vehicle parameters

This menu allows you to activate or deactivate certain driving and comfort equipment:

- wiper linked with reverse gear (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- guide-me-home and welcome lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- interior mood lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- daytime running lamps (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- directional headlamps (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- rear parking sensors (refer to the "Driving" section).

Choice of language

This menu allows you to select the language used by the display: Deutsch, English, Espanol, Français, Italiano, Nederlands, Portugues, Türkçe*.

Choice of units

This menu allows you to select the units: temperature (°Celsius or °Fahrenheit) and consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).

* According to country.

Warning and indicator lamps

Visual indicators which inform the driver of the occurrence of a fault (warning lamp) or of the operation of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lamp).

When the ignition is switched on

Certain warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

When the engine is started, these warning lamps should go off.

If they remain on, before moving off, refer to the explanations given for the warning or indicator lamp concerned in the tables below.

Associated warnings

The illumination, fixed or flashing, of certain warning lamps is accompanied by an audible signal.

Depending on your version of instrument panel, illumination of the warning lamp is also accompanied by:



- a message in the multifunction screen,

or



- a pictogram in the central instrument panel screen and a message in the multifunction screen,

or



- a pictogram and a message in the central instrument panel screen.

Warning lamps

When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, the illumination of one of the following warning lamps indicates a fault which requires action on the part of the driver.

! The illumination of a warning lamp is always accompanied by the display of an additional message, to assist you in identifying the fault.

If you encounter any problems, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
STOP	**STOP**	fixed, alone or associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.	Illumination of this warning lamp is associated with a serious braking system, power steering, engine lubrication or cooling system malfunction or a punctured tyre.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so as there is a risk that the engine will cut out while driving. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
 + 	**Braking**	fixed, associated with the STOP warning lamp.	The braking system fluid level is too low.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Top up with brake fluid recommended by PEUGEOT. If the problem persists, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed, associated with the STOP and ABS warning lamp.	The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system has a fault.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Maximum coolant temperature**	fixed with the needle in the red zone.	The temperature of the cooling system is too high.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up the level, if necessary. If the problem persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Service**	temporarily, accompanied by a message.	Minor faults have occurred for which there is no specific warning lamp.	Identify the fault by reading the message displayed in the screen, such as: - doors, boot or bonnet open, - low engine oil level, - low screenwash/headlamp wash reservoir level, - remote control battery flat, - low tyre pressures, - saturation of the particle emission filter on Diesel vehicles (see Checks - checking levels / particle emissions filter). For any other faults, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.	Major faults have occurred for which there is no specific warning lamp.	Identify the fault by reading the message shown in the screen and **you must then contact** a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Engine autodiagnosis system**	flashing.	The engine management system has a fault.	Risk of destruction of the catalytic converter. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	The emission control system has a fault.	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or qualified workshop without delay.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Low fuel level**	fixed with the needle in the red zone, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	When it first comes on there remains approximately **6 litres** of fuel in the tank. At this point, you begin to use the fuel reserve.	Refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel. Until sufficient fuel has been added, this warning lamp will come on every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message. This audible signal and message are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards **"0"**. Fuel tank capacity: approximately **60 litres**. Never continue to drive until you run out of fuel, as this could damage the emission control and injection systems.
	**Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)**	fixed.	The anti-lock braking system has a fault.	The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at reduced speed and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.
	**Dynamic stability control (ESP/ASR)**	flashing.	The ESP/ASR regulation is active.	The system optimises traction and improves the directional stability of the vehicle.
		fixed.	Unless it has been deactivated (button pressed and its indicator lamp on) the ESP/ASR system has a fault.	Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Directional headlamps**	flashing.	The directional headlamps system has a fault.	Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Foot on the brake pedal**	fixed.	You have forgotten to press the brake pedal when starting the engine, with an electronic gear control gearbox.	You have to press the brake pedal to start the engine (gear lever in position **N**).

The other warning lamps appear only in this instrument panel.

The illumination of certain warning lamps may be accompanied by an audible signal; an additional message is still displayed in the multifunction screen, to help you identify the fault.



! If they are associated with the **STOP** warning lamp, you must stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so!

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Door(s) open**	fixed if the speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h).	A door or the boot is still open.	Close the door or boot.
		fixed and accompanied by an audible signal if the speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h).		
	**Engine oil pressure**	fixed.	There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.	You must stop as soon it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Battery charge***	fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, ...).	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

* According to destination country.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Water in Diesel**	fixed.	The Diesel fuel filter contains water.	Risk of damage to the injection system on Diesel engines. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.
	**Airbags**	fixed.	One of the airbag or seat belt pretensioner systems has a fault.	Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Passenger's front airbag**	flashing in the instrument panel and/or in the seat belt belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display.	The passenger's front airbag has a fault.	The passenger's front airbag may not be deployed in the event of a serious impact. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Seat belt not fastened / unfastened**	fixed then flashing accompanied by an increasing audible signal.	The driver and/or the front passenger has not fastened or has unfastened their seat belt. At least one of the rear passengers has unfastened their seat belt (only on the 2nd row rear seats on SW individual rear seats).	Pull the strap then insert the tongue in the buckle.

Operation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has come into operation.
It may be accompanied by an audible signal.
Depending on your version of instrument panel, the illumination of the lamp is accompanied by:



- a message in the multi-function screen,

or



- a pictogram in the central instrument panel screen and a message in the multifunction screen,

or



- a pictogram and a message in the central instrument panel screen.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	Left-hand direction indicator	flashing with buzzer.	The lighting stalk is pushed down.	
	Right-hand direction indicator	flashing with buzzer.	The lighting stalk is pushed up.	
	Hazard warning lamps	flashing with audible signal.	The hazard warning lamps switch, located on the dashboard, has been operated.	The left-hand and right-hand direction indicators and their associated indicator lamps flash simultaneously.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Dipped beam headlamps**	fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Dipped beam headlamps" position or in the "AUTO" position in conditions of low light.	
	**Main beam headlamps**	fixed.	The lighting stalk is pulled towards you.	Pull the stalk again to return to dipped beam headlamps.
	**Front foglamps**	fixed.	The front foglamps are switched on.	Turn the ring on the stalk rearwards twice to switch off the front foglamps.
	**Rear foglamps**	fixed.	The rear foglamps are switched on.	Turn the ring on the stalk rearwards to switch off the rear foglamps.
	**Diesel engine pre-heating**	fixed.	The ignition switch is at the 2nd position (ignition on).	Wait until the warning lamp has switched off before starting. The duration for which the warning lamp is on is determined by the climatic conditions.
	**Parking brake**	fixed.	The parking brake is applied or not properly released.	Release the parking brake to switch off the warning lamp, keeping your foot on the brake pedal. Observe the safety recommendations. For further information on the parking brake, refer to the "Driving" section.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Passenger's front airbag**	fixed on the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display.	The control switch, located on the passenger's side of the dashboard, has been placed in the **"ON"** position. The passenger's front airbag is activated. In this case, do not install a "rear facing" child seat.	While you do not have a rear-facing child seat fitted to the front passenger seat, it is recommended that the passenger's front airbag be activated. On the other hand, before fitting a rear-facing child seat, you must turn the control switch to the **"OFF"** position.
ECO	**Stop & Start**	fixed.	When the vehicle stops (red lights, traffic jams, ...) the Stop & Start system has put the engine into STOP mode.	The warning lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically in START mode, as soon as you want to move off.
		flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.	STOP mode is temporarily unavailable. or START mode is invoked automatically.	Refer to "Driving - § Stop & Start" for special cases with STOP mode and START mode.

Deactivation warning lamps

If one of the following warning lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched off intentionally. This may be accompanied by an audible signal.

Depending on your version of instrument panel, illumination of the warning lamp is also accompanied by:



- a message in the multifunction screen,

or



- a pictogram in the central instrument panel screen and a message in the multifunction screen,

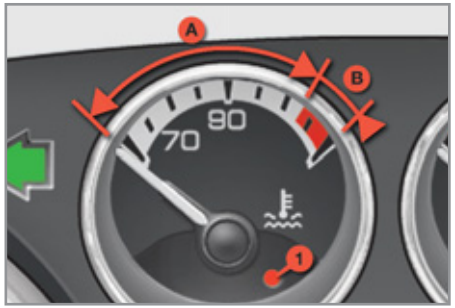
or



- a pictogram and a message in the central instrument panel screen.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	Passenger's front airbag	fixed in the instrument panel and/or in the seat belt and front passenger's airbag warning lamps display.	The control switch, located on the passenger's end of the dashboard, is set to the **"OFF"** position. The passenger's front airbag is deactivated. You can install a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat.	To activate the front passenger's airbag, set the switch to the **"ON"** position; in this case, it is not possible to fit a child seat in the rear-facing position on this seat.
	ESP/ASR	fixed.	The button, located in the middle of the dashboard, is pressed. Its indicator lamp is on. The ESP/ASR is deactivated. The following functions are deactivated: - ESP (dynamic stability control), - ASR (wheel anti-slip regulation).	Press the button again to manually reactivate these functions. Its indicator lamp goes off. From approximately 30 mph (50 km/h), these systems are reactivated automatically (except for the 1.6 litre THP 200 hp petrol engine). These function are activated automatically when the vehicle is started.

Coolant temperature indicator



With the engine running, when the needle is:

- in zone **A**, the temperature is correct,
- in zone **B**, the temperature is too high; the max temperature warning lamp **1** and the central **STOP** warning lamp come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.

Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

After driving for a few minutes, the temperature and pressure in the cooling system increase.

To top up the level:

- ☞ wait for the engine to cool,
- ☞ unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop,
- ☞ when the pressure has dropped, remove the cap,
- ☞ top up the level to the "MAX" mark.

Service indicator

System which informs the driver when the next service is due, in accordance with the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

The point at which the service is due is calculated from the last indicator zero reset. It is determined by two parameters:

- the distance travelled,
- the time elapsed since the last service.



More than 1 800 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

When the ignition is switched on, no service information appears in the screen.

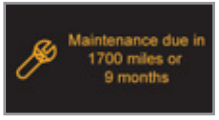
Between 600 miles (1 000 km) and 1 800 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the spanner symbolising the service operations comes on. The distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due.

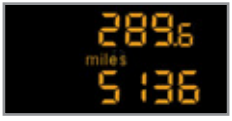
Example: 1 700 miles (2 800 km) remain before the next service is due.

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:





5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner goes off**; the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. The screen then indicates the total and trip distances.



Less than 600 miles (1 000 km) remain before the next service is due

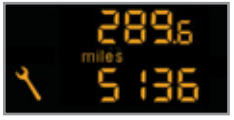
Example: 560 miles (900 km) remain before the next service is due.

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:





5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on** to indicate that a service must be carried out soon.



Service overdue

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner flashes** to indicate that the service must be carried out as soon as possible.

Example: the service is overdue by 186 miles (300 km).

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:





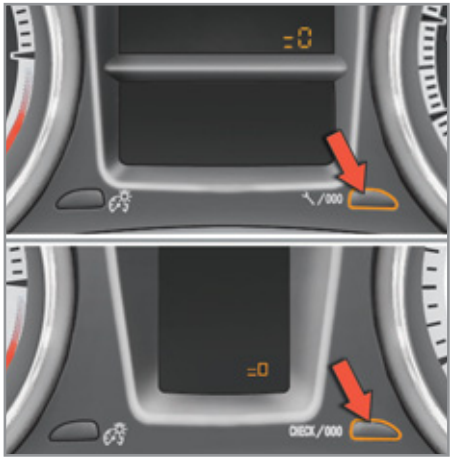
5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on**.



The distance remaining may be weighted by the time factor, depending on the driving conditions.

Therefore, the spanner may also come on if you have exceeded the two year service interval.

Service indicator zero reset



After each service, the service indicator must be reset to zero.

The procedure for resetting to zero is as follows:

- switch off the ignition,
- press and hold the **".../000"** button on the right of the instrument panel,
- switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,
- when the instrument panel central screen indicates **"=0"**, release the button; the spanner disappears from the screen.

Following this operation, if you wish to disconnect the battery, lock the vehicle and wait at least five minutes for the zero reset to be registered.

Retrieving the service information

You can access the service information at any time.

This information appears, depending on version, when running through the manual check procedure.

- Briefly press the **".../000"** button on the right of the instrument panel.

  The service information is displayed for a few seconds on the instrument panel central screen, then disappears.

Engine oil level indicator



This information is displayed for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, after the service information.

i The level shown will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

Oil level correct



Oil level low



This is indicated by the flashing of **"OIL"**, linked with the service warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen.

If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to prevent damage to the engine.

Oil level indicator fault



This is indicated by the flashing of **"OIL--"**. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Dipstick

Refer to the "Checks" section to locate the dipstick and the oil filler cap on your engine.



There are 2 marks on the dipstick:

- **A** = max; never exceed this level (risk of damage to the engine),
- **B** = min; top up the level via the oil filler cap, using the grade of oil suited to your engine.

Manual Check

This function allows you to check the status of the vehicle (reminder of the active alert warnings) and the service information.





☞ With the engine running, to start a manual check, briefly press the **"CHECK/000"** button on the instrument panel.

If no faults have been detected, **"CHECK OK"** appears in the instrument panel central screen.

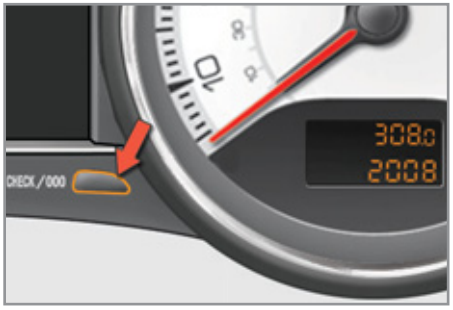
If a "minor" fault has been detected, the warning lamp concerned then **"CHECK OK"** appear in the instrument panel central screen. Contact a PEUGEOT or a qualified workshop.

If a "major" fault has been detected, only the warning lamps concerned appear in the instrument panel central screen. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Distance recorders

The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.



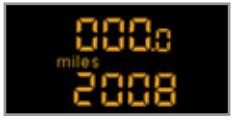


Total distance recorder

Measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its first registration.

Trip distance recorder

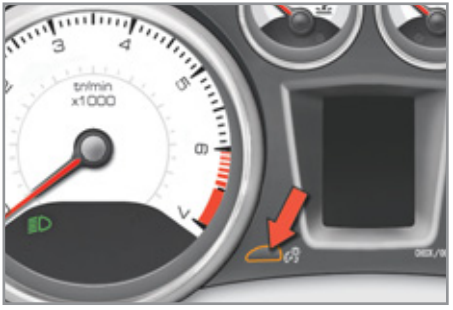
Measures a distance travelled since it was reset to zero by the driver.



☞ With the ignition on, press and hold this button until zeros appear.

Lighting dimmer

Permits manual adjustment of the brightness of the instruments and controls to suit the ambient light level. Only operates when the vehicle lighting is on, with the exception of the daytime running lamps.



Activation

- ☞ Press the button to change the brightness of the instruments and controls.
- ☞ When the lighting reaches the minimum setting, release the button, then press again to increase it.

or

- ☞ When the lighting reaches the maximum setting, release the button, then press again to reduce it.
- ☞ When the lighting reaches the level of brightness required, release the button.

Deactivation

When the vehicle lighting is off, or in day mode on vehicles fitted with daytime running lamps, pressing the button does not have any effect.

MONOCHROME SCREEN A (WITHOUT PEUGEOT CONNECT SOUND (RD5))



Displays in the screen

Depending on the context, displays:

- time,
- date,
- ambient temperature with air conditioning (the value if there is a risk of ice),
- trip computer,
- alert messages,
- parameter settings menus for the screen and vehicle equipment.

Controls



Three buttons are used to control the the screen:

- **"ESC"** to abandon the operation in progress,
- **"MENU"** to scroll through the menus or sub-menus,
- **"OK"** to select the menu or sub-menu required.

Main menu



☞ Press the **"MENU"** button to scroll through the various menus of the **main menu**:

- vehicle configuration,
- options,
- display settings,
- languages,
- units.

☞ Press the **"OK"** button to select the menu required.



Vehicle configuration



Once the "Vehicle configuration" menu has been selected, you can activate or deactivate the following equipment:

- wiper linked with reverse gear (see "Visibility"),
- daytime running lamps (see "Visibility"),
- rear parking sensors (see "Driving").

Options

Once the "Options" menu has been selected, you can start diagnostics on the state of the vehicle (current alerts).

Display settings

Once the "Display settings" menu has been selected, you can gain access to the following settings:

- year,
- month,
- day,
- hour,
- minutes,
- 12 or 24 hour mode.



☞ Once you have selected a setting, press the **"OK"** button to change its value.



☞ Wait for approximately ten seconds without any action to allow the changed data to be recorded or press the **"ESC"** button to cancel.

The screen then returns to the normal display.

Languages

Once the "Languages" menu has been selected, you can change the language used by the display (Français, Italiano, Nederlands, Portugues, Portugues-Brasil, Deutsch, English, Espanol).

Units

Once the "Units" menu has been selected, you can change the units of the following parameters:

- temperature (°C or °F),
- fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).

! For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

MONOCHROME SCREEN A



Displays in the screen

Displays according to context:

- time,
- date,
- ambient temperature with air conditioning (the value displayed flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- audio functions,
- trip computer,
- alert messages,
- screen display and vehicle equipment parameter settings menus.

Controls



From the control panel of your Peugeot Connect Sound (RD5), you can:

- press the **"MENU"** button for access to the **main menu**,
- press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to scroll through the items on the screen,
- press the **"MODE"** button to change the permanent application (trip computer, audio source...),
- press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to change a setting value,
- press the **"OK"** button to confirm,

  or

- press the **"ESC"** button to abandon the operation in progress.

Main menu



- Press the **"MENU"** button for access to the **main menu**, then press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to scroll through the various menus:
  - radio-CD,
  - vehicle configuration,
  - options,
  - display settings,
  - languages,
  - units.
- Press the **"OK"** button to select the menu required.

Radio-CD

With the Peugeot Connect Sound (RD5) switched on, once the "Radio-CD" menu has been selected you can activate or deactivate the functions linked with use of the radio (RDS, REG), or CD (CD introscan, shuffle, repeat).

For more information on the "Radio-CD" application, refer to the Peugeot Connect Sound (RD5) section.



Vehicle configuration



Once the "Vehicle Configuration" menu has been selected, you can activate or deactivate the following equipment:

- wiper linked with reverse gear (see "Visibility"),
- daytime running lamps (see "Visibility"),
- rear parking sensors (see "Driving").

Options

Once the "Options" menu has been selected, you can start diagnostics of the status of the equipment (active, not active, faulty).

Screen display settings

Once the "Display settings" menu has been selected, you can gain access to the following settings:

- year,
- month,
- day,
- hour,
- minutes,
- 12 or 24 hour mode.



☞ Once you have selected a setting, press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to change its value.



☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to switch respectively to the previous or next setting.

☞ Press the **"OK"** button to record the change and return to the normal display or press the **"ESC"** button to cancel.

Languages

Once the "Languages" menu has been selected, you can change the language used by the display (Français, Italiano, Nederlands, Portugues, Portugues-Brasil, Deutsch, English, Espanol).

Units

Once the "Units" menu has been selected, you can change the units of the following parameters:

- temperature (°C or °F),
- fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).

! For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

MONOCHROME SCREEN C



Displays in the screen

Displays according to context:

- time,
- date,
- ambient temperature with air conditioning (the value displayed flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- parking sensor information,
- audio functions,
- contacts and telephone information,
- trip computer (with type 1 instrument panel),
- alert messages,
- screen display and vehicle equipment parameter setting menus.

Controls



From the control panel of your Peugeot Connect Sound (RD5), you can:

- press the **"MENU"** button for access to the **main menu**,
- press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to scroll through the items on the screen,
- press the **"MODE"** button to change the permanent application (trip computer, audio source...),
- press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to change a setting value,
- press the **"OK"** button to confirm,

or

- press the **"ESC"** button to abandon the operation in progress.

Main menu



- Press the **"MENU"** button for access to the **main menu**:
  - audio functions,
  - diagnosis vehicle,
  - personalisation-configuration,
  - telephone (Bleutooth system).
- Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to select the menu required, then confirm by pressing the **"OK"** button.



"Audio functions" menu

With the Peugeot Connect Sound (RD5) switched on, once this menu has been selected you can activate or deactivate the functions linked with use of the radio (RDS, REG, RadioText), or CD (CD introscan, shuffle, repeat).

For more information on the "Audio functions" application, refer to the Peugeot Connect Sound (RD5) section.



"Diagnosis vehicle" menu

Once this menu has been selected, you can consult information concerning the status of the vehicle, such as the alert log.

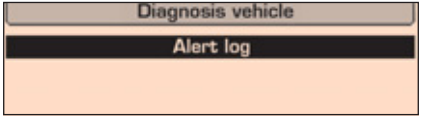
Alert log

This summarises the active warning messages, displaying them in succession on the multifunction screen.

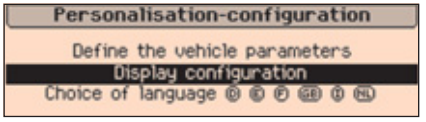
- Press the **"MENU"** button for access to the main menu.
- Press the arrows, then the **"OK"** button to select the "**Diagnosis vehicle**" menu.



- On the "**Diagnosis vehicle**" menu, select the following application:



"Personalisation-Configuration" menu



Once this menu has been selected, you can gain access to the following functions:

- define the vehicle parameters,
- display configuration,
- choice of language.

Define the vehicle parameters

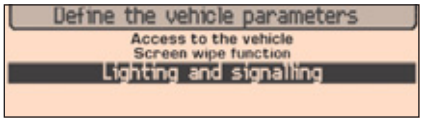
Once this menu has been selected, you can activate or deactivate the following equipment:

- wiper linked with reverse gear (see "Visibility"),
- "guide-me-home" lighting (see "Visibility"),
- interior mood lighting (see "Visibility"),
- daytime running lamps (see "Visibility"),
- rear parking sensors (see "Driving").

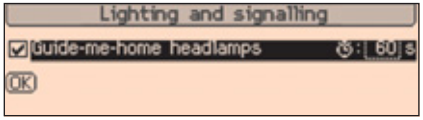


Example: setting of the duration of the "guide-me-home" lighting

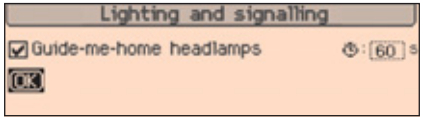
☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons, then the **"OK"** button to select the menu required.



☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons, then the **"OK"** button to select the "Guide-me-home headlamps" line.



☞ Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to set the value required (15, 30 or 60 seconds), then press the **"OK"** button to confirm.



☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons, then the **"OK"** button to select the **"OK"** box and confirm or press the **"ESC"** button to cancel.

Display configuration

Once this menu has been selected, you can gain access to the following settings:

- brightness-video setting,
- date and time setting,
- choice of units.

Choice of language

Once this menu has been selected, you can change the language used by the display (Deutsch, English, Espanol, Français, Italiano, Nederlands, Portugues, Portugues-Brasil, Russe, Türkçe*).

* According to country.



"Telephone" menu

With the Peugeot Connect Sound (RD5) switched on, once this menu has been selected you can configure your Bluetooth system (pairing), consult the various telephone directories (calls log, services...) and manage your communications (pick up, hang up, call waiting, secret mode...).

For more information on the "Telephone" application, refer to the Peugeot Connect Sound (RD5) section.

! For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

RETRACTABLE COLOUR SCREEN (WITH PEUGEOT CONNECT NAVIGATION (RT6))



Displays in the screen

Displays according to context:

- time,
- date,
- altitude,
- ambient temperature (the value displayed flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- parking sensor information,
- audio functions,
- telephone and contacts information,
- satellite navigation system information,
- alert messages,
- menus for settings of the screen, navigation system and vehicle equipment.

Controls



From the navigation system control panel, to select one of the applications:

- ☞ press the dedicated **"RADIO"**, **"MUSIC"**, **"NAV"**, **"TRAFFIC"**, **"PHONE"** or **"SETUP"** button for access to the corresponding menu,
- ☞ turn dial **A** to select a function, an item in a list,
- ☞ press button **B** to confirm the selection,

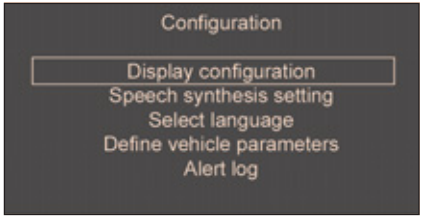
  or

- ☞ press the **"ESC"** button to abandon the current operation and return to the previous display.

For more information on these applications, refer to the "Audio and Telematics" section.

For operation of the retractable screen (opening, closing, adjustment of the position, etc.), refer to the "Access to the retractable screen" section.

"SETUP" menu



☞ Press the **"SETUP"** button to gain access to the configuration menu:
- "Display configuration",
- "Voice synthesis",
- "Choice of language",
- "Vehicle parameters",
- "Alert log".

! For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

Display configuration

This menu allows you to choose a colour scheme for the screen, to adjust the brightness, set the date and time and choose the units for distance (km or miles), fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l) and temperature (°Centigrade or °Fahrenheit).

i When setting the time, you can select **"Synchronise minutes with GPS"**, so that the minutes are set automatically by satellite reception.

Voice synthesis

This men allows you to adjust the volume for navigation instructions and to choose the type of voice (male or female).

Choice of language

This menu allows you to choose the language used by the screen (French, English, Italian, Portuguese, Spanish, German, Dutch, Turkish, Polish, Russian).

Vehicle parameters*

This menu allows you to activate or deactivate certain driving and comfort equipment, arranged by category:
- **Parking assistance**
- **Operation of wipers**
  - Enagages rear wiper linked to reverse (Rear wiper operates in reverse gear; refer to "Visibility"),
- **Lighting configuration (see "Visibility"):**
  - Duration of the guide-me-home lighting,
  - Directional headlamps (main/additional directional lighting),
  - Mood lighting (Interior mood lighting),
  - Daytime running lamps function**.

Alert log

It lists the active alerts by displaying their associated messages in turn.

* Depending on version.
** According to country of sale.

RETRACTABLE COLOUR SCREEN (WITH PEUGEOT CONNECT MEDIA NAVIGATION (NG4 3D))



Displays in the screen

Displays according to context:

- time,
- date,
- altitude,
- ambient temperature (the value displayed flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- parking sensor information,
- audio functions,
- telephone and address book information,
- satellite navigation system information,
- display screen or navigation system parameter settings menus.

Controls



From the Peugeot Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D) control panel, to select one of the applications:

- press the dedicated **"RADIO"**, **"MEDIA"**, **"NAV"**, **"TRAFFIC"**, **"ADDR BOOK"** or **"SETUP"** button for access to the corresponding menu,
- turn dial **A** to select a function, an item in a list,
- press button **B** to confirm the selection,

  or
- press the **"ESC"** button to abandon the current operation and return to the previous display.

For more information on these applications, refer to the Peugeot Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D) section.

For operation of the retractable screen (opening, closing, adjustment of the position, etc.), refer to the "Access to the retractable screen" section.

For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

"SETUP" menu



☞ Press the **"SETUP"** button to gain access to the **"SETUP"** menu. This allows you to select from the following functions:
- "Language and speech",
- "Date and time",
- "Display",
- "Units",
- "System".

Language and speech

This menu allows you to:
- select the language used by the display (Deutsch, English, Espanol, Français, Italiano, Nederlands, Polski, Portugues, Portugues-Brasil, Türkçe*),
- select the voice recognition parameters (activation/deactivation, advice on use, personal voice programming, etc.),
- set the volume of the voice synthesiser.

Date and time

This menu allows you to set the date and time, the format of the date and the format of the time.

Principle of GPS (GMT) synchronisation:

1. Confirm the selection "Synchronise with GPS", the time is then aligned with GMT universal time, the date is updated as well.
2. Using the 4-direction navigator, move the cursor onto the hours field and press on **OK**.
3. Using the rotating ring, you can then adjust the time to the time zone of your choice.

   Note that in the case of a summer/winter time change, the time zone must be set again manually.

Display

This menu allows you to set the brightness of the screen, the screen colour scheme and the colour of the map (day/night or auto mode).

Units

This menu allows you to select the units: temperature (°C or °F) and distance (miles or km).

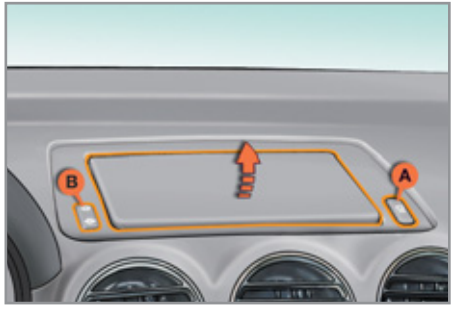
System

This menu allows you to restore the factory configuration, display the software version and activate scrolling text.

! For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

* According to country.

Access to the retractable screen



This screen is opened and stored automatically.

However, you can also open it, store it and adjust it using the various manual controls:

- opening or storing by means of control **A**,
- angle adjustments by means of control **B**.

It is also fitted with safety auto-reverse protection.

Opening the screen

☞ With the screen stored, press control **A** to open it.

The screen opens automatically when the ignition is switched on, when the audio and telematics system is switched on, when an outgoing telephone call is made, when a voice command is given and when a warning message linked with the STOP warning lamp is received.

If you close the screen during operation of the audio and telematics system, it will re-open automatically when an outgoing telephone call is made, when a voice command is given or when a warning message linked with the STOP warning lamp is received.

Closing the screen

☞ With the screen open, press control **A** to store it.

The screen is stored automatically when the ignition is switched off, after approximately three seconds, if the audio and telematics system is off.

Safety auto-reverse

If the screen meets an obstacle as it opens or closes, the movement stops immediately and is reversed by a few millimetres.

After clearing the obstacle, issue the command required again.

If you wish the screen to open or close automatically when the audio and telematics system is switched on or off, the screen must not be closed when the audio and telematics system is operating.

Adjusting the position of the screen



When the screen is open, you can adjust it precisely in different ways:

☞ press the corresponding part of control **B** to move the screen towards you or towards the windscreen,

or

☞ push or pull the screen gently by hand.

Storing the position of the screen

The system has four pre-set positions in its memory.

Each time the screen is closed, the system stores the last position of the screen.

Each time the screen is re-opened, the system returns the screen to the pre-set position closest to that stored.

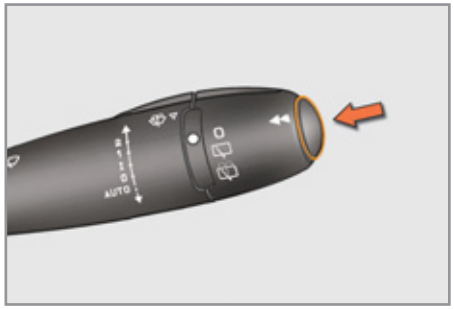
TRIP COMPUTER

System that gives you information on the journey in progress (range, fuel consumption…).

Monochrome screen A



Information displays



☞ Press the button, located at the end of the **wiper stalk**, to display the various items of trip computer information in succession.

The trip computer provides the following information:

- range,



- current fuel consumption,



- Stop & Start time counter,



- distance travelled,



- average fuel consumption,



- average speed.



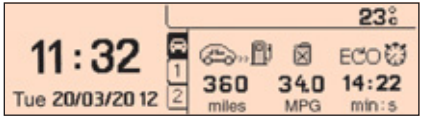
☞ The next press then returns you to the normal display.

Zero reset

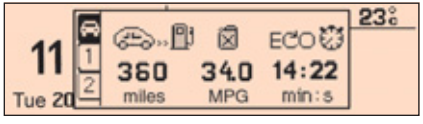


☞ Press the control for more than two seconds to reset to zero the distance travelled, the average fuel consumption and the average speed.

Monochrome screen C



Permanent display (**"MODE"** button on the Peugeot Connect Sound (RD5) control panel)

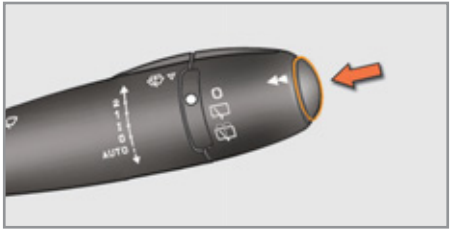


Temporary display in a new window.

Small central screen with type 2 instrument panel



Display of information with the screen C or the small central screen in the instrument panel



☞ Cycle through the information with successive short presses on this button.

i Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the trip computer information appears in the multifunction screen or on the central screen in the instrument panel.

Large central screen with type 3 instrument panel



Display of information



☞ Press the up and down arrows on the instrument panel **navigator**, associated with Peugeot Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D), to cycle through the information.

The trip computer can display:

- The current information tab, for the trip in use, with:
  - the range,
  - the current fuel consumption,
  - the distance remaining to be travelled or the Stop & Start counter.

- The trip **"1"** tab with:
  - the distance travelled,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the average speed.

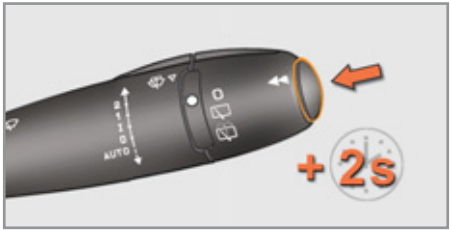
- The trip **"2"** tab with:
  - the distance travelled,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the average speed.

☞ Pressing the button again takes you to a black screen.

A further press returns you to the normal display.

Trip zero reset

With the monochrome screen C or the instrument panel small screen



☞ When the trip required is displayed, press the button on the end of the **wiper stalk** for more than two seconds.

With the instrument panel large central screen



☞ When the required trip is displayed, press the **"OK"** button on the instrument panel **navigator**, associated with Peugeot Connect Media Navigation NG4 3D), for more than two seconds.

Trips **"1"** and **"2"** are independent but their use is identical.

For example, trip **"1"** can be used for daily figures, and trip **"2"** for monthly figures.

A few definitions (trip computer)



Range

(miles or km)

This indicates the distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank in relation to the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled.

i This value may vary following a change in the style of driving or the relief, resulting in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

When the range falls below 20 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed. After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed when it exceeds 60 miles (100 km).

! If dashes are displayed continuously while driving in place of the digits, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



Current fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

This is the average fuel consumption during the last few seconds.

i This function is only displayed from 20 mph (30 km/h).



Average fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

This is the average fuel consumption since the last trip computer zero reset.



Average speed

(mph or km/h)

This is the average speed calculated since the last trip computer zero reset (ignition on).



Distance travelled

(miles or km)

This indicates the distance travelled since the last trip computer zero reset.



Distance remaining to destination

(miles or km)

This is the distance remaining to be travelled to the final destination. It is either calculated instantly by the navigation system, if guidance is activated, or entered by the user.

If the distance is not entered, dashes are displayed in place of the digits.



Stop & Start time counter

(minutes / seconds or hours / minutes)

If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.

It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the key.



VENTILATION

Air intake

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the outside via the grille located at the base of the windscreen or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

Air treatment

The incoming air follows various routes depending on the controls selected by the driver:

- direct arrival in the passenger compartment (air intake),
- passage through a heating circuit (heating),
- passage through a cooling circuit (air conditioning).

The temperature control enables you to obtain the level of comfort required by mixing the air of the various circuits.

The air distribution control enables you to diffuse the air in the passenger compartment combining several air vents.

The air flow control enables you to increase or reduce the speed of the ventilation blower.

Control panel

The controls of this system are grouped together on control panel **A** on the centre console. Depending on the model, the functions offered are:

- level of comfort required,
- air flow,
- air distribution,
- demisting and defrosting,
- manual or digital air conditioning controls.

Air diffusion

1. Windscreen demisting vents.
2. Front side window demisting/defrosting vents.
3. Side adjustable air vents.
4. Central adjustable air vents.
5. Air outlets to the front footwells.
6. Adjustable air vents for the rear passengers.
7. Air outlets to the rear footwells.

RECOMMENDATIONS FOR VENTILATION AND AIR CONDITIONING

In order for these systems to be fully effective, follow the operation and maintenance guidelines below:

- To obtain an even air distribution, take care not to obstruct the exterior air intake grilles located at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents and the air outlets, as well as the air extractor located in the boot.
- Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the digital air conditioning system.
- Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes, once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
- Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly (refer to the "Checks" section).

  We recommend the use of a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its special active additive, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).
- To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly as recommended in the servicing booklet.
- If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power and so improves the towing ability.

Stop & Start

The heating and air conditioning systems only work when the engine is running. To maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment, you can temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system (see "Driving").

If after an extended stop in sunshine, the interior temperature is very high, first ventilate the passenger compartment for a few moments.

Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

The air conditioning system does not contain chlorine and does not present any danger to the ozone layer.

The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle which is perfectly normal.

HEATING / VENTILATION



MANUAL AIR CONDITIONING



The heating / ventilation or air conditioning systems can only operate with the engine running.

1. Temperature adjustment



☞ Turn the dial from blue (cold) to red (hot) to adjust the temperature to your requirements.

2. Air flow adjustment



☞ Turn the dial from position **1** to position **5** to obtain a comfortable air flow.

☞ If you place the air flow control in position **0** (deactivation of the system), the temperature is no longer maintained at a comfortable level. However, a slight flow of air, due to the movement of the vehicle, can still be felt.

3. Air distribution adjustment



Windscreen and side windows.



Windscreen, side windows and footwells.



Footwells.



Central and side vents.



The air distribution can be adapted by placing the dial in an intermediate position.

4. Air intake / Air recirculation

The intake of exterior air prevents the formation of mist on the windscreen and side windows.

The recirculation of interior air isolates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and smoke.

Return to exterior air intake as soon as possible to prevent deterioration of the the air quality and the formation of mist.



☞ Press the button to recirculate the interior air. The indicator lamp comes on to confirm this.

☞ Press the button again to permit the intake of exterior air. The indicator lamp switches off to confirm this.

5. Air conditioning On / Off



The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It enables you to:

- lower the temperature, in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3 °C.

Switching on

☞ Press the **"A/C"** button, the button's indicator lamp comes on.

> The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment control **2** is in position **"0"**.
>
> To obtain cooled air more quickly, you can use recirculation of interior air for a few moments. Then return to fresh air intake.

Switching off

☞ Press the **"A/C"** button again, the button's indicator lamp goes off.

Switching off may affect comfort levels (humidity, condensation).

FRONT DEMIST - DEFROST



These markings on the control panel indicate the control positions for rapid demisting or defrosting of the windscreen and side windows.

With the heating / ventilation system

☞ Put the temperature and air flow controls to the dedicated marked position.

☞ Put the air intake control to the "Exterior air intake" position

(control indicator lamp off).

☞ Put the air distribution control to the "Windscreen" position.

With manual air conditioning

☞ Put the temperature, air flow and distribution controls to the dedicated marked position.

☞ Put the air intake control to the "Exterior air intake" position

(indicator lamp on the control off).

☞ Switch on the air conditioning by pressing the **"A/C"** button; the warning lamp in the button comes on.

> With Stop & Start, when the demisting, air conditioning and air flow functions are activated, STOP mode is not available.

REAR SCREEN DEMIST - DEFROST



The control button is located on the heating or air conditioning system control panel.

Switching on

The rear screen demisting/defrosting can only operate when the engine is running.

☞ Press this button to demist/defrost the rear screen and (depending on version) the door mirrors. The indicator lamp associated with the button comes on.

Switching off

The demisting/defrosting switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of current.

☞ It is possible to stop the demisting/defrosting operation before it is switched off automatically by pressing the button again. The indicator lamp associated with the button switches off.

If the engine is switched off before the demisting/defrosting is switched off automatically, demisting/defrosting will resume next time the engine is switched on.

☞ Switch off the demisting/defrosting of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as appropriate as lower current consumption results in reduced fuel consumption.

DUAL-ZONE DIGITAL AIR CONDITIONING



The air conditioning only operates when the engine is running.

Automatic operation

1. Automatic comfort programme



☞ Press the **"AUTO"** button. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

We recommend the use of this mode: it permits automatic and optimised adjustment of all of the functions, passenger compartment temperature, air flow, air distribution and air recirculation, in accordance with the comfort value that you have chosen.

This system is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

When the engine is cold, to prevent too great a distribution of cold air, the air flow will reach its optimum level gradually.

In cold weather, it favours the distribution of warm air to the windscreen, side windows and footwells only.

2. Driver's side adjustment

3. Passenger side adjustment



The driver and front passenger can each adjust the temperature to their requirements.

The value indicated on the display corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a temperature in degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit.

☞ Turn control **2** or **3** to the left or to the right respectively to decrease or increase this value.

A setting around the value 21 provides optimum comfort. However, depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is normal.

You are advised to avoid a left / right setting difference of more than 3.

On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort value, there is no need to change the value displayed in order to obtain the comfort required. The system corrects the difference in temperature automatically and as quickly as possible.

4. Automatic visibility programme



The automatic comfort programme may not be sufficient to quickly demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows (humidity, several passengers, ice, etc.).

☞ In this case, select the automatic visibility programme.

The system automatically controls the air conditioning, the air flow and the air intake and provides optimum distribution of the ventilation to the windscreen and side windows.

☞ To switch it off, press the **"visibility"** button again or press the **"AUTO"** button, the indicator lamp in the button goes off and the indicator lamp in the **"AUTO"** button comes on.

With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.

Manual operation

If you wish, you can make a different choice from that offered by the system by changing a setting. The other functions will still be controlled automatically.

☞ Pressing the **"AUTO"** button returns the system to completely automatic operation.

i For maximum cooling or heating of the passenger compartment, it is possible to exceed the minimum value 14 or the maximum value 28.

☞ Turn control **2** or **3** to the left until **"LO"** is displayed or to the right until **"HI"** is displayed.

5. Air conditioning On / Off



☞ Press this button to switch off the air conditioning.

Switching the system off could result in discomfort (humidity, condensation).

☞ Press this button again to return to automatic operation of the air conditioning. The indicator lamp in the **"A/C"** button comes on.

6. Air distribution adjustment



☞ Press one or more buttons to direct the air flow towards:

- the windscreen and side windows (demisting or defrosting),
- the windscreen, the side windows and the vents,
- the windscreen, the side windows, the vents and the footwells,
- the vents and the footwells,
- the vents,
- the footwells,
- the windscreen, the side windows and the footwells.

7. Air flow adjustment



☞ Turn this control to the left to decrease the air flow or to the right to increase the air flow.

The air flow indicator lamps, between the two fans, come on progressively in relation to the value requested.

8. Air intake / Air recirculation



☞ Press this button for recirculation of the interior air. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

Air recirculation enables the passenger compartment to be isolated from exterior odours and smoke.

☞ As soon as possible, press this button again to permit the intake of outside air and prevent the formation of condensation. The indicator lamp on the button switches off.

9. Mono-zone / Dual-zone



☞ Press this button to equalise the comfort value on the passenger's side with that on the driver's side (mono zone). The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

Switching the system off

☞ Turn the air flow control to the left until all of the indicator lamps go off.

This action switches off the air conditioning and the ventilation.

Temperature related comfort is no longer guaranteed but a slight flow of air, due to the movement of the vehicle, can still be felt.

☞ Turn the air flow dial to the right or press the **"AUTO"** button to reactivate the system with the values set before it was switched off.

! Avoid prolonged operation in interior air recirculation mode or driving for long periods with the system off (risk of condensation and deterioration of the air quality).

FRONT SEATS WITH MANUAL ADJUSTMENTS

Seat consisting of a seat cushion, a seat back and a head restraint which can all be adjusted to adapt your position for ease of driving and comfort.

Forwards-backwards

☞ Raise the control and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

Height

☞ Pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, as many times as required, to obtain the position required.

Seat back angle

☞ Push the control rearwards.













FRONT SEATS

Seat consisting of a seat cushion, a seat back and a head restraint which can all be adjusted to adapt your position for ease of driving and comfort.

> The electrical functions of the driver's seat are deactivated approximately one minute after the ignition is switched off.
>
> To reactivate them, switch on the ignition.

Driver's seat electric adjustments

Forwards-backwards

☞ Push the control forwards or rearwards to slide the seat.

Cushion height and angle

☞ Tilt the rear part of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required height.

☞ Tilt the front part of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required angle.

Seat back angle

☞ Tilt the control forwards or rearwards to adjust the angle of the seat back.









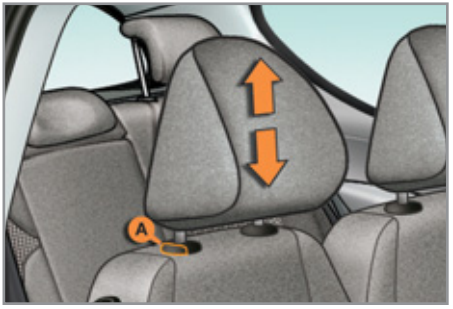




Additional adjustments

Head restraint height adjustment

- To raise the head restraint, pull it forwards and upwards at the same time.
- To remove the head restraint, press the lug **A** and pull the head restraint upwards.
- To put the head restraint back in place, engage the head restraint stems in the openings keeping them in line with the seat back.
- To lower the head restraint, press the lug **A** and the head restraint at the same time.



! The head restraint is fitted with a frame with notches which prevents it from lowering; this is a safety device in case of impact.

The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.

Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be in place and adjusted correctly.

Manual lumbar adjustment

- Turn the knob to obtain the desired level of lumbar support.



Table position for front passenger seat

Placing this seat in the table position, with the rear seats also in the table position, allows you to transport long objects.

- Pull the control upwards to fold the seat back onto the seat cushion.

  To lower the seat back fully, tilt the seat back angle adjustment control.
- Pull the control again to release the seat back and raise it.

  When put back in place, the seat back returns to its initial position.



i Do not forget to fold the "aircraft" type table fixed on the back of the seat first.

Heated seats control

With the engine running, the front seats can be heated separately.

☞ Use the adjustment dial, placed on the side of each front seat, to switch on and select the level of heating required:

0: Off.

1: Low.

2: Medium.

3: High.



Storing driving positions

System which registers the electrical settings of the driver's seat and door mirrors. It enables you to store and recall two positions using the buttons on the side of the driver's seat.



Storing a position

Using buttons M / 1 / 2

☞ Switch on the ignition.

☞ Adjust your seat and the door mirrors.

☞ Press button **M**, then press button **1** or **2** within four seconds.

An audible signal indicates that the position has been stored.

Storing a new position cancels the previous position.

Recalling a stored position

Ignition on or engine running

☞ Press button **1** or **2** to recall the corresponding position.

An audible signal confirms that adjustment is complete.

You can interrupt the current movement by pressing button **M**, **1** or **2** or by using one of the seat controls.

A stored position cannot be recalled while driving.

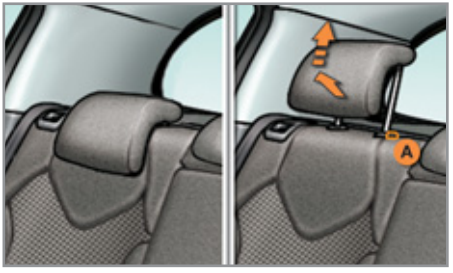
Recalling stored positions is deactivated 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.

REAR SEATS

Bench seat, the left-hand (2/3) or right-hand (1/3) section of which can be folded to adapt the boot load space.

Rear head restraints

These have a high position (comfort and safety) and a low position (rear visibility).



They can also be removed.

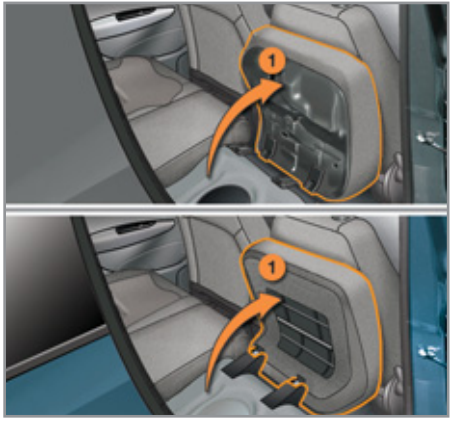
To remove a head restraint:

- ☞ pull the head restraint fully forwards and upwards at the same time,
- ☞ then, press the lug **A**.

! Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be in place and in the high position when passengers are seated in the rear.

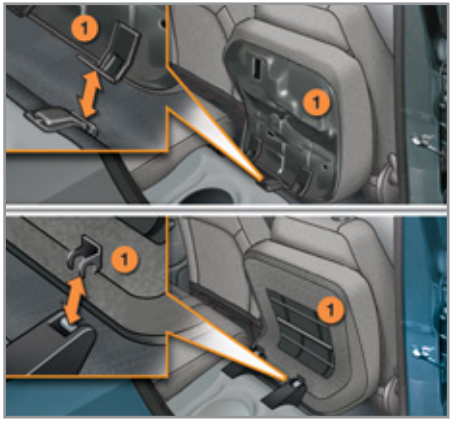
Removing the seat cushion

- ☞ Move the corresponding front seat forwards if necessary.
- ☞ Raise the seat cushion **1** lifting it with a hand from the rear.
- ☞ Tilt the seat cushion **1** fully against the front seat.
- ☞ Remove the seat cushion **1** from its fixings by pulling upwards.



Refitting the seat cushion

- ☞ Position the seat cushion **1** vertically in its fixings.
- ☞ Fold down the seat cushion **1**.
- ☞ Press on the seat cushion to secure it.



Folding the seat

In order to fold a rear seat without any risk of damage, **always start with the seat cushion, never with the seat back:**

- move the corresponding front seat forwards if necessary,
- raise the seat cushion **1** lifting it with a hand from the rear,
- tilt the seat cushion **1** fully against the front seat,



- check that the seat belt is positioned correctly on the side of the seat back,
- lower or remove the head restraints if necessary,
- pull the control **2** forwards to release the seat back **3**,
- tilt the seat back **3**.



i The seat cushion **1** can be removed to increase the loading volume.

Returning the seat back to its original position

When returning the rear seat back to its original position:

- put the seat back **3** in the upright position and secure it,
- fold the seat cushion **1**,
- refit the head restraints or put them back in place.



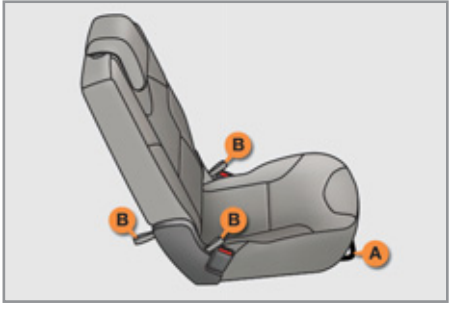
! When returning the rear seat back to its original position, take care not to trap the seat belts and ensure that their buckles are positioned correctly.



REAR SEATS

In the 2nd row, these three seats are identical and can be adjusted for your comfort. They can be placed in the table position, folded or removed to obtain a variety of loading configurations.

Forwards-backwards adjustment



☞ Raise the bar **A** and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

Seat back angle adjustment

☞ Pull one of the straps **B**, located at the front of the seat, then adjust the angle to one of the 7 positions offered.

☞ Release the strap to lock the seat back in this position.

i During the forwards-backwards and seat back angle adjustment operations, take care not to apply any force to the load space cover roller.

Table position



☞ Place the head restraint in the low position.

☞ Pull one of the straps **B**, located at the front of the seat.

☞ Fold the seat back fully onto the seat cushion; the seat automatically moves back fully.

☞ Press on the seat back to lock it.

i You can also carry out these operations from the 3rd row using one of the straps **B**, located at the rear of the seat.

Folding



Once the seat has been placed in the table position, carry out the following operations:

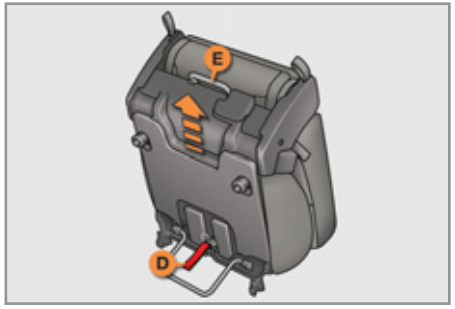
☞ move back the seat fully using the bar **A**,

☞ raise the lever **C**, located at the rear right of the seat, to release the rear feet,

☞ raise the seat fully so that it remains in the **fully folded** position.

i These operations allow access to the 3rd row, exit from the 3rd row and folding of the seats from the boot.

Removal



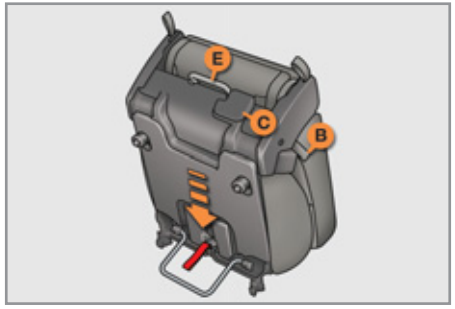
Once the seat has been folded, carry out the following operations:

- pull the red strap **D** to release the front feet of the seat,
- lift the seat and carry it using the carrying handle **E**.

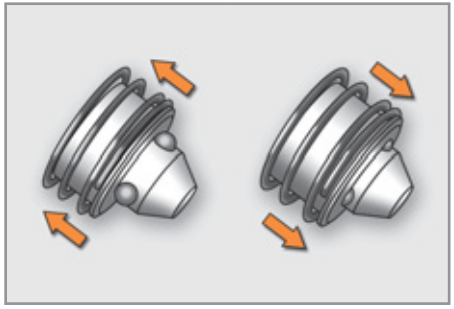
! Never use the adjustment straps to remove, install or carry a seat; use the carrying handle **E** provided for this purpose (weight of the seat: approximately 18 kg).

Once the seat has been removed, in order to protect its electronic systems, it must be stored in a clean, dry location sheltered from bad weather.

Installation



- Check that no object is obstructing the anchorages on the floor, so preventing correct locking seat's feet.
- Carry the seat using the carrying handle **E**.
- Put the front feet of the seat in place in the corresponding anchorages.
- Raise the lever **C** to check that the rear feet are released.



Locked **Released**

- Tilt the folded seat rearwards; the front and rear feet lock automatically.
- Pull one of the straps **B** to release the seat back, then raise it.

ADDITIONAL SEATS

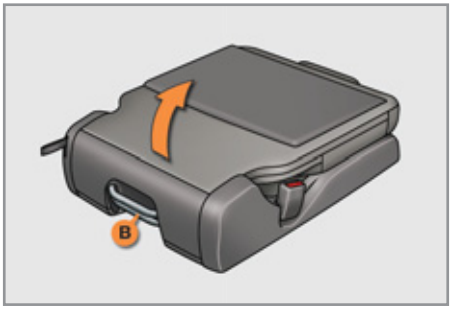
In the 3rd row, these two seats are identical and are used for the occasional carrying of additional passengers. They can be placed in the table position, folded or removed to obtain a variety of loading configurations.

Table position



- Place the head restraint in the low position.
- Pull the strap **A**, located at the rear left of the seat.
- Fold the seat back onto the seat cushion.

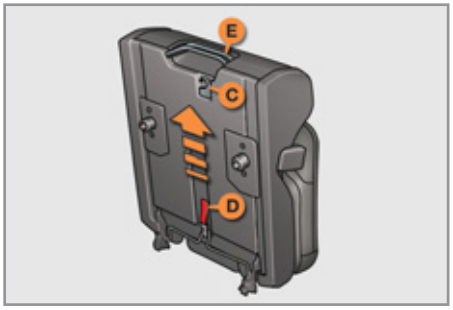
Folding



Once the seat has been placed in the table position, carry out the following operations:

- remove the load space cover roller,
- raise the bar **B**, located at the rear of the seat, to release the rear feet,
- raise the seat and secure it to the head restraint rod of the 2nd row seat, using the integrated retaining strap **C**.

Removal

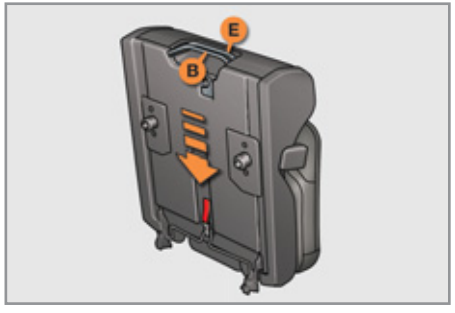


Once the seat has been folded, carry out the following operations:

- pull the red strap **D** to release the front feet of the seat,
- lift the seat and carry it using the carrying handle **E**,
- put the anchorage covers back in place to obtain a flat boot floor.

! Never use the adjustment and retaining straps to remove, install or carry a seat; use the carrying handle **E** provided for this purpose (weight of the seat: approximately 15 kg).

Installation



- First remove the anchorage covers on the floor.
- Carry the seat using the carrying handle **E**.
- Put the seat's front feet in place in the corresponding anchorages.
- Raise the bar **B** to check that the rear feet are released.
- Tilt the folded seat rearwards; the front and rear feet lock automatically.
- Raise the seat back.

SEAT MODULARITY AND VARIOUS CONFIGURATIONS

Designed to be modular, your vehicle offers numerous seat installation and loading configurations.

Special features

The outer seats of the 2nd row can be moved inwards, once the central seat has been removed.

The 2nd row seats can be installed in the 3rd row.

Conversely, the 3rd row seats cannot be installed in the 2nd row.

! Do not seat passengers in the 3rd row if the 2nd row seats are in the **fully folded** position.

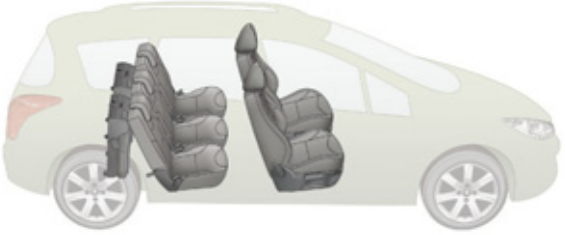
i Operations to change the existing configuration must only be carried out when stationary (see the "Rear seats" and "Additional seats" sections of the SW individual rear seats).

Examples of configurations

7 seats



5 seats with additional seats folded



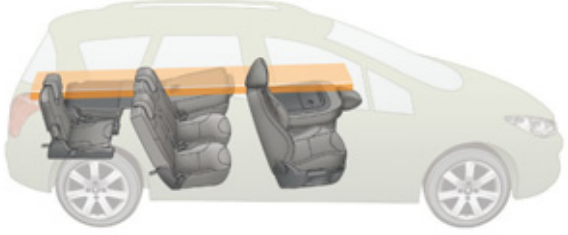
5 seats



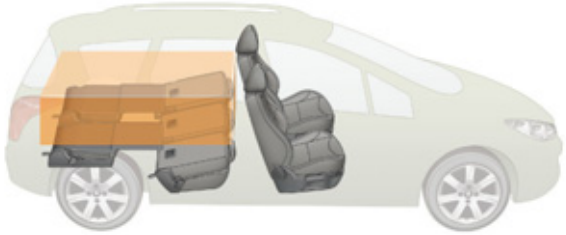
5 seats with 2nd row seats moved inwards

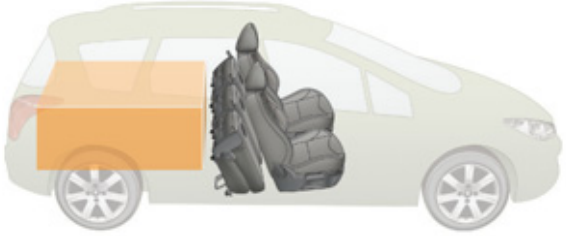


Transporting long objects



Loading a large volume







MIRRORS



Door mirrors

Each fitted with an adjustable mirror glass permitting the lateral rearward vision necessary for overtaking or parking. They can also be folded for parking in confined spaces.

Demisting - Defrosting

If your vehicle is fitted with heated mirrors, the demisting-defrosting operates by switching on the heated rear screen (refer to the "Rear screen demist-defrost" page).

Adjustment



- Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- Move control **B** in all four directions to adjust.
- Return control **A** to the central position.

! The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear.

Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Folding

- From outside: lock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- From inside: with the ignition on, pull the control **A** in the central position rearwards.

i If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Pull again on control **A**.

Unfolding

- From outside: unlock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- From inside: with the ignition on, pull the control **A** in the central position rearwards.

i The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Never fold or unfold the electric folding mirrors manually.

Automatic tilting in reverse gear

System which provides a view of the ground during parking manoeuvres in reverse gear.



Programming

- ☞ With the engine running, engage reverse gear.
- ☞ Select and adjust the left-hand and right-hand mirrors in succession.

The adjustment is stored immediately.

Switching on

- ☞ With the engine running, engage reverse gear.
- ☞ Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.

The glass of the mirror selected tilts downwards, in accordance with its programming.

Switching off

- ☞ Exit reverse gear and wait ten seconds.

or

- ☞ Return control **A** to the central position.

The mirror glass returns to its initial position.

The mirror glass also returns to its initial position:

- if the speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h),
- if the engine is switched off.

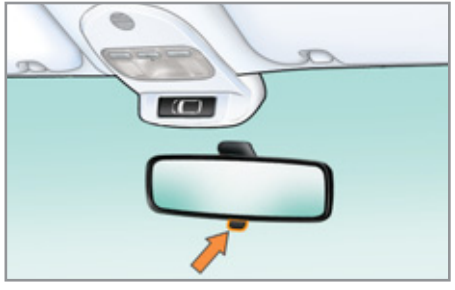
Rear view mirror

Adjustable mirror providing a central rearward view.

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass: this reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the headlamps from following vehicles, low sun...

! As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the "blind spot".

Manual day/night model



Adjustment

☞ Adjust the mirror so that the glass is directed correctly in the "day" position.

Day / night position

☞ Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.

☞ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

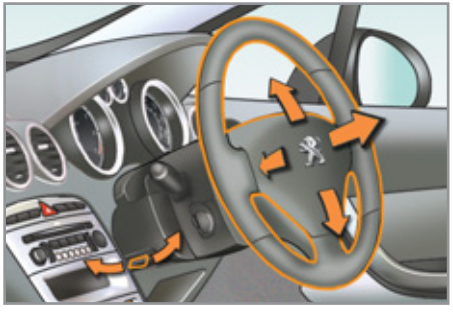
Automatic day/night model

By means of a sensor, which measures the light from the rear of the vehicle, this system automatically and progressively changes between the day and night uses.



i In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

STEERING WHEEL ADJUSTMENT



☞ **When stationary**, pull the control lever to release the adjustment mechanism.

☞ Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.

☞ Push the control lever to lock the adjustment mechanism.

! As a safety precaution, these operations should only be carried out while the vehicle is stationary.

REMOTE CONTROL KEY

System which permits central unlocking or locking of the vehicle using the lock or from a distance. It is also used to locate and start the vehicle, as well as providing protection against theft.



Unlocking the vehicle

Unfolding the key

☞ First press this button to unfold the key.

Unlocking using the remote control



☞ Press the open padlock to unlock the vehicle.

Unlocking using the key

☞ Turn the key to the left in the driver's door lock to unlock the vehicle.

Unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

According to version, the door mirrors unfold at the same time.

Locking the vehicle

Normal locking using the remote control



☞ Briefly press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle.

or

☞ Press and hold the closed padlock to close the windows automatically in addition to locking (according to version).

Normal locking using the key

☞ Turn the key to the right in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle.

Locking is confirmed by fixed lighting of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

According to version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

If one of the doors or the boot is still open, the central locking does not take place.

When the vehicle is locked, if it is unlocked inadvertently, it will relock automatically after thirty seconds unless a door is opened.

The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Deadlocking using the remote control



☞ Short press on the closed padlock to lock the vehicle

or

☞ Long press on the closed padlock to lock the vehicle and also close the windows (depending on version).

☞ Short press on the closed padlock again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Deadlocking using the key

☞ Turn the key to the right in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle.

☞ Turn the key to the right again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Deadlocking is confirmed by fixed lighting of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

According to version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

! Deadlocking renders the exterior and interior door controls inoperative.

It also deactivates the manual central control button.

Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.



Folding the key

☞ First press this button to fold the key.

If you do not press the button when folding the key, there is a risk of damage to the mechanism.

Locating your vehicle

This function allows you to identify your vehicle from a distance, particularly in poor light. Your vehicle must be locked.



☞ Press the closed padlock on the remote control.

This will switch on the courtesy lamps and the direction indicators will flash for a few seconds.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic engine immobiliser

The key contains an electronic chip which has a special code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.

This electronic engine immobiliser locks the engine management system a few minutes after the ignition is switched off and prevents starting of the engine by anyone who does not have the key.



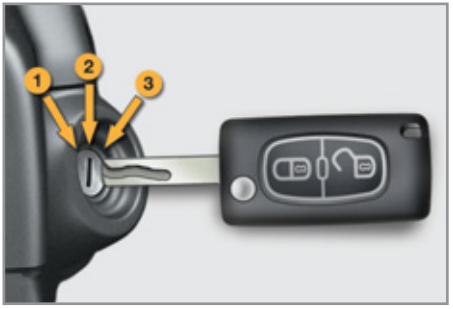
In the event of a fault, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the screen.

In this case, your vehicle will not start; contact a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible.

Keep safely the label attached to the keys given to you on acquisition of the vehicle.

Starting the vehicle

- Insert the key in the ignition switch.
  The system recognises the starting code.
- Turn the key fully towards the dashboard to position **3 (Starting)**.
- When the engine starts, release the key.



Switching the vehicle off

- Immobilise the vehicle.
- Turn the key fully towards you to position **1 (Stop)**.
- Remove the key from the ignition switch.

! A heavy object (key fob...), attached to the key and weighing down on its shaft in the ignition switch, could cause a malfunction.

i **Key left in the "Ignition on" position**

On opening the driver's door, an alert message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, to remind you that the key is still in the ignition switch at position **1 (Stop)**.

If the key has been left in the ignition switch at position **2 (Ignition on)**, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour.

To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1 (Stop)**, then back to position **2 (Ignition on)**.

Remote control problem

Following disconnection of the vehicle battery, replacement of the remote control battery or in the event of a remote control malfunction, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.

- First of all, use the key in the lock to unlock or lock your vehicle.
- Then, reinitialise the remote control.

If the problem persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible.

Reinitialisation

- Switch off the ignition.
- Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition on)**.
- Press the closed padlock immediately for a few seconds.
- Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition switch.

The remote control is fully operational again.

Changing the battery



Battery ref.: CR1620 / 3 volts.

If the battery is flat, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the multi-function screen.

- Unclip the casing using a coin at the notch.
- Slide the flat battery out of its location.
- Slide the new battery into its location observing the original direction.
- Clip the casing.
- Reinitialise the remote control.

Lost keys

Visit a PEUGEOT dealer with the vehicle's registration document, your personal identification documents and if possible the key code label.

The PEUGEOT dealer will be able to look up the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key.

Remote control

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.

Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. You run the risk of stopping it from working and the remote control would have to be reinitialised.

The remote control does not operate when the key is in the ignition switch, even when the ignition is switched off, except for reinitialisation.

Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.

However, the vehicle unlocks automatically in the event of a serious impact causing airbag deployment.

As a safety precaution (with children on board), remove the key from the ignition switch when you leave the vehicle, even for a short time.

Anti-theft protection

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.

When purchasing a second-hand vehicle

Have the pairing of all of the keys in your possession checked by a PEUGEOT dealer, to ensure that only your keys can be used to open and start the vehicle.

Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment.

Take them to an approved collection point.

ALARM

System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins. It provides the following types of monitoring:

- **Exterior perimeter**

The system checks for opening of the vehicle.

The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot, the bonnet...

- **Interior volumetric**

The system checks for any variation in the volume in the passenger compartment.

The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

Self-protection function

The system checks for the putting out of service of its components.

The alarm is triggered if the battery, the central control or the wires of the siren are put out of service or damaged.

! For all work on the alarm system, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system



Activation

☞ Switch off the ignition and get out of the vehicle.

☞ Press the locking button on the remote control.

The monitoring system is active: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second.

After the locking button on the remote control is pressed, the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after a delay of 5 seconds and the interior volumetric monitoring after a delay of 45 seconds.

i If an opening (door, boot...) is not closed fully, the vehicle is not locked but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after a delay of 45 seconds at the same time as the interior volumetric monitoring.

Deactivation

☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control.

The alarm system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric monitoring to avoid unwanted triggering of the alarm in certain cases such as:

- leaving a pet in the vehicle,
- leaving a window partially open,
- washing your vehicle.

Deactivation of the interior volumetric monitoring

☞ Switch off the ignition.
☞ Within ten seconds, press the button until the indicator lamp is on continuously.
☞ Get out of the vehicle.
☞ Press the locking button on the remote control immediately.

The exterior perimeter monitoring alone is activated: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second.

i To be effective, this deactivation must be carried out each time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivation of the interior volumetric monitoring

☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control to deactivate the exterior perimeter monitoring.
☞ Press the locking button on the remote control to activate all the monitoring functions.

The indicator lamp in the button again flashes once per second.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for thirty seconds.

! The monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times in succession.

When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control, rapid flashing of the indicator lamp in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

☞ Unlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.
☞ Open the door; the alarm is triggered.
☞ Switch on the ignition; the alarm stops. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.

Malfunction

When the ignition is switched on, fixed illumination of the indicator lamp in the button indicates a malfunction of the system.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Automatic activation*

2 minutes after the last door or the boot is closed, the system is activated automatically.

☞ To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, first press the unlocking button on the remote control.

* According to country.

ELECTRIC WINDOWS

Fitted with a safety anti-pinch system and a deactivation system to prevent misuse of the rear controls.



Electric window controls

1. **Driver's electric window.**
2. **Passenger's electric window.**
3. **Rear right electric window.**
4. **Rear left electric window.**
5. **Deactivation of the rear electric window and door controls.**

One-touch electric windows

There are two options:

- **manual mode**
  - ☞ Press or pull the control gently. The window stops when the control is released.

- **automatic mode**
  - ☞ Press or pull the control firmly. The window opens or closes fully when the control is released.
  - ☞ Pressing the control again stops the movement of the window.

i The electric window controls remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off or until the vehicle is locked after a door is opened.

If one of the passenger windows cannot be operated from the driver's door control panel, carry out the operation from the control panel of the passenger door concerned, and vice versa.

! After approximately ten consecutive complete opening/closing movements of the window, a protection function is activated which only authorises closing of the window to prevent damage to the electric window motor.

Once the window is closed, the controls will become available again after approximately 40 minutes.

Safety anti-pinch

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and partially lowers again.

i If the window cannot be closed (for example, in the presence of ice), immediately after the movement is reversed:

- ☞ press and hold the control until the window opens fully,
- ☞ then pull the control immediately and hold it until the window closes,
- ☞ continue to hold the control for approximately one second after the window has closed.

The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.

Reinitialisation

If a window does not rise automatically, its operation must be reinitialised:

- ☞ pull the control until the window stops,
- ☞ release the control and pull it again until the window closes fully,
- ☞ continue to hold the control for approximately one second after the window has closed,
- ☞ press the control to lower the window automatically to the low position,
- ☞ when the window has reached the low position, press the control again for approximately one second.

The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.

Deactivation of the rear electric window and door controls



- ☞ For the safety of your children, press control **5** to deactivate the rear electric window controls regardless of their position.

Indicator lamp on, the rear controls are deactivated.

Indicator lamp off, the rear controls are activated.

i This control also deactivates the interior controls for the rear doors (refer to the section "Child safety - Electric child lock").

! Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

If an obstacle is encountered during operation of the electric windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the control concerned.

When the driver operates the controls for the passengers' electric windows, they must ensure that no one is preventing correct closing of the windows.

The driver must ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly.

Be aware of children when operating the windows.

DOORS

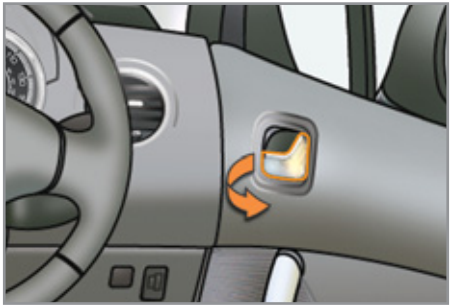
Opening

From outside



☞ After unlocking the vehicle completely using the remote control or the key, pull the door handle.

From inside



☞ Pull the interior control lever of a front door; this unlocks the vehicle completely.

! Version with deadlocking

The interior door controls do not operate when the vehicle is deadlocked.

Closing

When a door is not closed correctly:

- **when the engine is running**, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by a message in the multifunction screen for a few seconds,
- **when the vehicle is moving** (speed higher than 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen for a few seconds.

Centralised locking control

System which provides full manual locking or unlocking of the doors from the inside.



Locking

☞ Press this button to lock the vehicle.

The red indicator lamp in the button comes on.

> If one of the doors is open, the central locking from the inside does not take place.

Unlocking

☞ Press this button again to unlock the vehicle.

The red indicator lamp in the button goes off.

> **When locking / deadlocking from the outside**
>
> When the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the red indicator lamp flashes and the button is inactive.
>
> ☞ After normal locking, pull the interior door lever to unlock the vehicle.
>
> ☞ After deadlocking, it is necessary to use the remote control or the key to unlock the vehicle.

Anti-intrusion security

System which provides full automatic locking or unlocking of the doors and boot while driving.

You can activate or deactivate this function.

Locking

When the speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the doors and boot lock automatically.

> If one of the doors is open, the automatic central locking does not take place.
>
> If the boot is open, the automatic central locking of the doors is active.

Unlocking

☞ Above 6 mph (10 km/h), press this button to unlock the doors and boot temporarily.

Activation



☞ Press this button for more than two seconds.

A confirmation message appears in the multifunction screen, accompanied by an audible signal.

Deactivation

☞ Press this button again for more than two seconds.

A confirmation message appears in the multifunction screen, accompanied by an audible signal.

Emergency control

System allowing the doors to be locked and unlocked manually in the event of a malfunction of the central locking system or battery failure.

Locking the driver's door

☞ Insert the key in the door lock, then turn it to the rear.

You can also apply the procedure described for the passenger doors.

Unlocking the driver's door

☞ Insert the key in the door lock, then turn it to the front.

Locking the front and rear passenger doors



☞ Open the doors.

☞ On the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on (see Child Safety).

☞ Remove the black cap, located on the edge of the door, using the key.

☞ Insert the key in the socket without forcing it, then without turning it, move the latch sideways towards the inside of the door.

☞ Remove the key and refit the cap.

☞ Close the doors and check that the vehicle has locked correctly from the outside.

Unlocking the front and rear passenger doors

☞ Pull the interior door opening control.

BOOT



Opening

☞ After unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the key, pull the handle and raise the tailgate.

Closing

☞ Lower the tailgate using the interior grab handle.

If the tailgate is not closed correctly:

- **when the engine is running**, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by a message in the multifunction screen for a few seconds,
- **when the vehicle is moving** (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen for a few seconds.

BOOT



Opening

☞ After unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the key, pull the handle and raise the tailgate.

Closing

☞ Lower the tailgate using the interior grab handle.

If the tailgate is not closed correctly:

- **when the engine is running**, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by a message in the multifunction screen for a few seconds,
- **when the vehicle is moving** (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen for a few seconds.

Tailgate release

System allowing the mechanical unlocking of the boot in the event of a battery or central locking system malfunction.



Unlocking

☞ Fold back the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.

☞ Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the tailgate.

☞ Move the latch to the left.

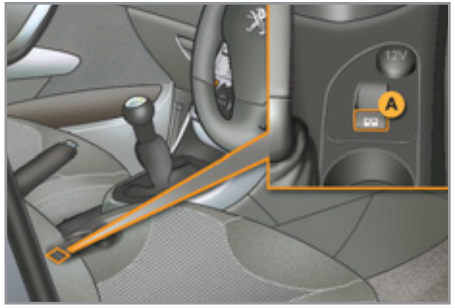
Locking after closing

If the fault persists after closing again, the boot will remain locked.

PANORAMIC SUNROOF

Component which has a tinted glass panoramic surface to increase the light and visibility in the passenger compartment.

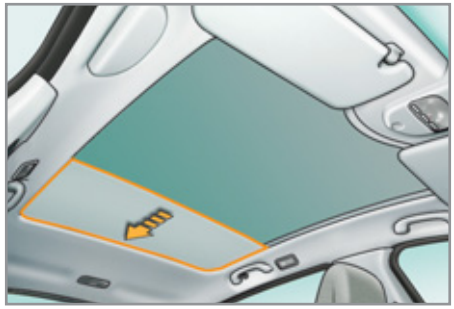
Fitted with an electric blind in several sections to improve temperature and noise related comfort.



One-touch electric blind

There are two options for opening and closing:

- **manual mode**
  ☞ Pull or press control **A** gently.
  The blind stops when you release the control.



- **automatic mode**
  ☞ Pull or press control **A** firmly.
  One press opens or closes the blind completely.
  Pressing the control again stops the blind.

Safety anti-pinch

In automatic mode and at the end of its travel, if the blind meets an obstacle while closing it stops and moves back slightly.

Reinitialisation: if the blind's supply is cut off while it is moving, the safety anti-pinch must be reinitialised:

☞ press the control until the blind is fully closed,

☞ continue to press for at least 3 seconds. A slight movement of the blind will then be noticeable, confirming the reinitialisation.

If the blind re-opens during a closing manoeuvre, and immediately after it stops:

☞ pull the control until the blind is fully open,

☞ press the control until the blind is fully closed.

The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.

If the blind meets an obstacle during operation, you must reverse the movement of the blind. To do this, press the control concerned.

When the driver operates the blind control, he must ensure that no one is preventing correct closing of the blind.

The driver must ensure that passengers use the blind correctly.

Be aware of children when operating the blind.

FUEL TANK

Capacity of the tank: approximately 60 litres.

Low fuel level

When the low fuel level is reached, this warning lamp comes on on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and an alert message. When it first comes on, you have **approximately 6 litres** of fuel remaining.

Until sufficient fuel has been added, this warning lamp comes on every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message. When driving, this audible signal and the display of the alert message are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards **"0"**.

Refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.

If you run out of fuel (Diesel), refer also to the "Checks" section.

! With Stop & Start, never refuel with the system in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key.

Filling

A label affixed to the inside of the flap reminds you of the type of fuel to be used according to your engine.

More than 5 litres of fuel must be added in order to be registered by the fuel gauge.

To fill the tank safely:

- ☞ **it is essential that the engine is switched off,**
- ☞ open the fuel filler flap,
- ☞ insert the key in the cap, then turn it to the left,
- ☞ remove the cap and secure it on the hook, located on the inside of the flap,
- ☞ fill the tank, but **do not continue after the 3rd cut-off of the nozzle**; this could cause malfunctions.

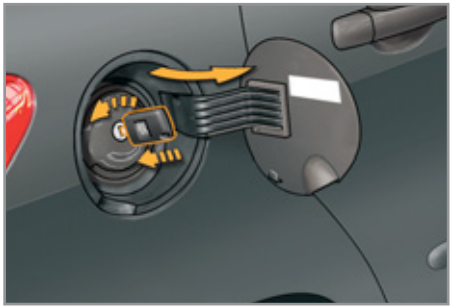
When filling is complete:

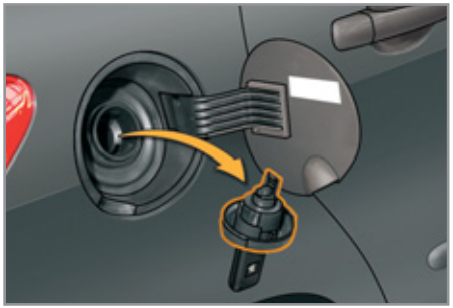
- ☞ refit the cap,
- ☞ turn the key to the right, then remove it from the cap,
- ☞ close the flap.

Operating fault

A fuel gauge malfunction is indicated by the return of the fuel gauge needle to zero.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.





i The key cannot be removed from the lock until the cap is put back on the tank.

Opening the cap may cause an inrush of air. This vacuum, which is perfectly normal, is caused by the sealing of the fuel system.

Quality of the fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are perfectly compatible with E10 or E24 type petrol biofuels (containing 10 % or 24 % ethanol), conforming to European standards EN 228 and EN 15376.

E85 type fuels (containing up to 85 % ethanol) are reserved exclusively for vehicles marketed for the use of this type of fuel (BioFlex vehicles). The quality of the ethanol must comply with European standard EN 15293.

For Brazil only, special vehicles are marketed to run on fuels containing up to 100 % ethanol (E100 type).

Quality of the fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are perfectly compatible with biofuels which conform to current and future European standards (Diesel fuel which complies with standard EN 590 mixed with a biofuel which complies with standard EN 14214) available at the pumps (containing up to 7 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

The B30 biofuel can be used in certain Diesel engines; however, this use is subject to strict application of the special servicing conditions. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

The use of any other type of (bio)fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel...) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

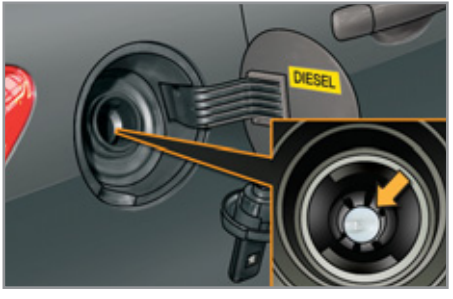




MISFUEL PREVENTION (DIESEL)*

Mechanical device which prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol. It avoids the risk of engine damage that can result from filling with the wrong fuel.

Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device appears when the filler cap is removed.



Operation

When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the fuel filler neck of your Diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.

Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.

It remains possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank.

In order to ensure a good flow of fuel, do not place the nozzle of the fuel can in direct contact with the flap of the misfuel prevention device and pour slowly.

Travelling abroad

As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible.

Before travelling abroad, we recommend that you check with the PEUGEOT dealer network, whether your vehicle is suitable for the fuel pumps in the country in which you want to travel.

* According to country of sale.

EXTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROLS

Control stalk for the selection and control of the various front and rear lamps providing the vehicle's lighting.

Main lighting

The various front and rear lamps of the vehicle are designed to adapt the driver's visibility progressively in relation to the climatic conditions:

- sidelamps, to be seen,
- dipped beam headlamps to see without dazzling other drivers,
- main beam headlamps to see clearly when the road is clear.

Additional lighting

Other lamps are fitted to fulfil the requirements of particular driving conditions:

- a rear foglamp to be seen from a distance,
- front foglamps for even better forward vision,
- directional headlamps for improved visibility when cornering,
- daytime running lamps to be seen during the day.

Settings

Various automatic lighting control modes are also available depending on options:

- daytime running lamps,
- automatic illumination of headlamps,
- directional lighting,
- guide-me-home lighting.

Model without AUTO lighting



Model with AUTO lighting



Manual controls

The lighting is controlled directly by the driver by means of the ring **A** and the stalk **B**.

A. Main lighting mode selection ring: turn it to position the symbol required facing the mark.

0 Lamps off.

AUTO Automatic illumination of headlamps.

Sidelamps.

Dipped headlamps or main beam headlamps.

B. Stalk for switching headlamps: pull the stalk towards you to switch the lighting between dipped and main beam headlamps.

In the lamps off and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash") by maintaining a pull on the stalk.

Displays

Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument panel confirms that the lighting selected is on.

Model with rear foglamp only



Model with front foglamps and a rear foglamp



C. Foglamp selection ring.

The foglamps operate with the dipped and main beam headlamps.

Rear foglamp

☞ To switch on the foglamp, turn the ring **C** forwards.

When the lighting is switched off automatically (with AUTO model), the foglamp and the dipped beam headlamps will remain on.

☞ To switch off all of the lighting, turn the ring **C** rearwards.

Front and rear foglamps

Rotate and release the ring **C**:

☞ forwards a first time to switch on the front foglamps,

☞ forwards a second time to switch on the rear foglamp,

☞ rearwards a first time to switch off the rear foglamp,

☞ rearwards a second time to switch of the front fog lamps.

When the lighting is switched off automatically (with AUTO model) or when the dipped headlamps are switched off manually, the foglamps and sidelamps will remain on.

☞ Turn the ring rearwards to switch off the foglamps, the sidelamps will then switch off.

! In good or rainy weather, both day and night, the front foglamps and the rear foglamp are prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or snow.

In these weather conditions, it is your responsibility to switch on the foglamps and dipped beam headlamps manually as the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light.

Do not forget to switch off the front foglamps and the rear foglamp when they are no longer necessary.

Switching off the lamps when the ignition is switched off

On switching off the ignition, all of the lamps turn off immediately, except for dipped beam if guide-me-home lighting is activated.

Switching on the lamps after the ignition is switched off

To reactivate the lighting control, rotate ring **A** to the **"0"** position - lamps off, then to the desired position.

On opening the driver's door a temporary audible signal warns the driver that the lighting is on.

The lamps, with the exception of the sidelamps, switch off automatically after a maximum duration of thirty minutes to prevent discharging of the battery.

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

LED lamps



They come on when the engine is started.

Depending on the destination country, they are used for:

- daytime running lamps* in day mode and sidelamps in night mode (they are brighter when daytime running lamps),

or

- sidelamps in day and night mode.

Where LED lamps are fitted, the filament bulbs for the daytime running lamps / sidelamps in the front lamp units are not used.

* function that can be set in the vehicle configuration menu.

Daytime running lamps

Daytime lighting, compulsory in certain countries, which comes on automatically when the engine is started making the vehicle more visible to other users.

This function is assured:

- in countries where it is imposed by regulations,

  by illumination of the dipped beam headlamps with the sidelamps and number plate lamps; this function cannot be deactivated.
- for other countries where it is provided,

  by the use of dedicated lamps (bulbs or LEDs); this function can be activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

The lighting control stalk must be placed in the **"0"** or **"AUTO"** (day mode) position.

Deactivation of the daytime running lamps is effective after operation of the lighting control stalk or after the next engine start; activation is effective immediately.

The instruments and controls (instrument panel, multifunction screen, air conditioning control panel, ...) are not illuminated, except in night mode with manual or automatic illumination of headlamps.

Manual guide-me-home lighting

Temporarily keeping the dipped beam headlamps on after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.



Switching on

- With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting stalk.
- A further "headlamp flash" switches the function off.

Switching off

The manual guide-me-home lighting switches off automatically after a set time.

Automatic illumination of headlamps

The sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, when a low level of external light is detected or in certain cases of activation of the windscreen wipers.

As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.



Activation

- Turn ring to the **"AUTO"** position. The automatic illumination of headlamps is accompanied by a message in the screen.

Deactivation

- Turn ring to a position other than **"AUTO"**. Deactivation is accompanied by a message in the screen.

Operating fault



In the event of a fault with the sunshine sensor, the lighting come on, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel and/or a message appears in the screen, accompanied by an audible signal.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. Therefore, the lighting will not come on automatically.

Do not cover the sunshine sensor, coupled with the rain sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

Automatic "Guide-me-home" lighting

When the automatic illumination of headlamps functions is activated, if the ambient light level is low the dipped beams remain on when switching off the ignition.

Settings



Activation and deactivation, as well as the duration of the guide-me-home lighting can be set in the vehicle configuration menu.

Exterior welcome lighting

The remote switching on of the lighting makes your approach to the vehicle easier in poor light. It is activated according to the level of light detected by the sunshine sensor.

Switching on

☞ Press the open padlock on the remote control.

The dipped beam headlamps and the sidelamps come on; your vehicle is also unlocked.

Switching off

The exterior welcome lighting switches off automatically after a set time, when the ignition is switched on or on locking the vehicle.

The activation, deactivation and duration of the welcome lighting are independant of the settings for the automatic guide-me-hope lighting.

MANUAL ADJUSTMENT OF HALOGEN HEADLAMPS



To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the height of the halogen headlamps should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

0. 1 or 2 people in the front seats.
-. 3 people.
1. 5 people.
-. Intermediate setting.
2. 5 people + maximum authorised load.
-. Intermediate setting.
3. Driver + maximum authorised load.

The initial setting is position **"0"**.

AUTOMATIC ADJUSTMENT OF XENON HEADLAMPS



In order to avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, this system corrects the height of the xenon headlamp beams automatically and when stationary, in relation to the load in the vehicle.

If a malfunction occurs, this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.

The system then places your headlamps in the lowest position.

! Do not touch the xenon headlamp bulbs.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

DIRECTIONAL LIGHTING

When the dipped or main beam headlamps are on, this function enables the light beams to provide improved lighting of the side of the road when cornering.

The use of this function, from approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) and associated with the xenon headlamps only, considerably improves the quality of your lighting when cornering.

with directional lighting



without directional lighting



Programming



The function is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

Operating fault

If a fault occurs, this warning lamp flashes in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message in the screen.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i When stationary or moving at very low speed or when reverse gear is engaged, the function is inactive.

The status of the function remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

WIPER CONTROLS

System for selection and control of the various front and rear wiping modes for the elimination of rain and cleaning.

The vehicle's front and rear wipers are designed to improve the driver's visibility progressively according to the climatic conditions.

Programming

Various automatic wiper control modes are also available according to the following options:

- automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers,
- rear wiping on engaging reverse gear.

Model without AUTO wiping



Model with AUTO wiping



Manual controls

The wiper commands are issued directly by the driver by means of the stalk **A** and the ring **B**.

Windscreen wipers

A. Wiping speed selection stalk.

2 Fast (heavy rain).

1 Normal (moderate rain).

I Intermittent (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).

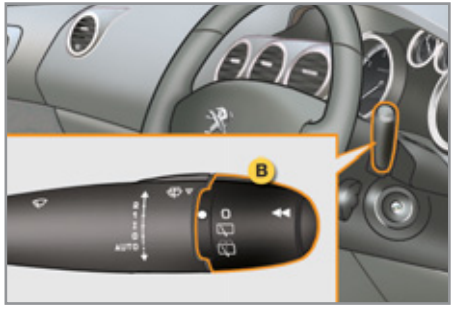
0 Off.

↓ Single wipe (press down and release).

or

AUTO ↓ Automatic, then single wipe (see the corresponding section).

Rear wiper



B. Rear wiper selection ring:

park,

intermittent wipe,

wash-wipe (set duration).

Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation if the windscreen wipers are operating.

Programming



The function is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

This function is activated by default.

! If a significant accumulation of snow or ice is present, or when using a tail-gate bicycle carrier, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the multifunction screen configuration menu.

Windscreen and headlamp wash



☞ Pull the windscreen wiper stalk towards you. The windscreen wash then the windscreen wipers operate for a fixed period.

The headlamp washers only operate when **the dipped beam headlamps are on**.

Screenwash/headlamp wash low

In the case of vehicles fitted with headlamp washers, when the minimum level of the reservoir is reached, this warning lamp and/or the service warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.

Next time you stop, fill the screenwash / headlamp wash fluid reservoir.

The warning lamp is displayed when the ignition is switched on, or every time the stalk is operated, until the reservoir is filled.

Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers

The windscreen wipers operate automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, if rain is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rainfall.



Activation

This is controlled manually by the driver by pushing the stalk downwards to the **"AUTO"** position.

It is accompanied by a message in the screen.



Switching off

This is controlled manually by the driver by moving the stalk upwards then returning it to position **"0"**.

It is accompanied by a message in the screen.

The automatic rain sensitive wipers must be reactivated if the ignition has been off for more than one minute, by pushing the stalk downwards.

Operating fault

If an automatic wiping malfunction occurs, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Do not cover the rain sensor, linked with the sunshine sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror.

Switch off the automatic rain sensitive wipers when using an automatic car wash.

In winter, to avoid damaging the wiper blades, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic rain sensitive wipers.

Special position of the windscreen wipers



This position permits release of the windscreen wiper blades.

It is used for cleaning or replacement of the blades. It can also be useful, in winter, to detach the blades from the windscreen.

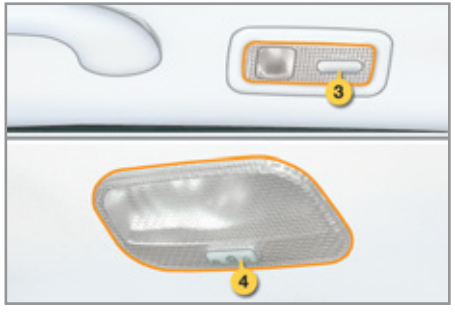
- ☞ Any action on the wiper stalk in the minute after switching off the ignition places the blades vertically on the screen.
- ☞ To park the blades again, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper stalk.

To maintain the effectiveness of the "flat-blade" type of wiper blades, it is advisable to:

- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen,
- replace them at the first signs of wear.

COURTESY LAMPS





1. **Front courtesy lamp**
2. **Map reading lamps**
3. **Rear side reading lamps**
4. **Rear courtesy lamp**

! Take care not to place anything in contact with the courtesy lamps.

Front and rear courtesy lamps

In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- when a door is opened,
- when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.

Permanently off.

Permanent lighting.

i With the "permanent lighting" mode, the duration of lighting varies depending on the context:

- with the ignition off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.

i When the front courtesy lamp is in the "permanent lighting" position, the rear courtesy lamp will also come on, unless it is in the "permanently off" position.

To switch off the rear courtesy lamp, place it in the "permanently off" position.

Map reading lamps

☞ With the ignition on, press the corresponding switch.

Rear side reading lamps

With the ignition on and the switch pressed, the reading lamp comes on in "permanent lighting" mode. It goes off on switching off the ignition or if the switch is pressed again.

With the ignition on and the switch off, it comes on:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- when a door is opened,
- when the remote control locking button is pressed, in order to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.

Pressing the switch changes to "permanent lighting" mode.

INTERIOR MOOD LIGHTING

The dimmed passenger compartment lighting improves visibility in the vehicle when the light is poor.



Switching on

At night, the footwell lighting and the front courtesy mood lamp come on automatically when the sidelamps are switched on.

Switching off

The interior mood lighting switches off automatically when the sidelamps are switched off.

Programming



The function is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

This function is activated by default.

INTERIOR WELCOME LIGHTING

The remote switching on of the passenger compartment lighting makes your entry into the vehicle easier in poor light. It is activated in accordance with the light intensity detected by the brightness sensor.

Switching on

☞ Press the open padlock on the remote control.

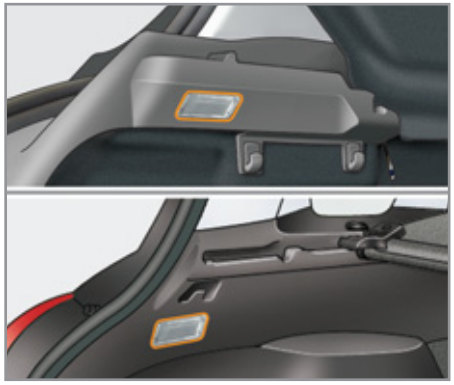
The front door sill lighting, the footwell lighting and the courtesy lamps come on; your vehicle is also unlocked.

Switching off

The interior welcome lighting switches off automatically after a set time or when one of the doors is opened.

i The welcome lighting duration is associated with and identical to that of the automatic guide-me-home lighting.

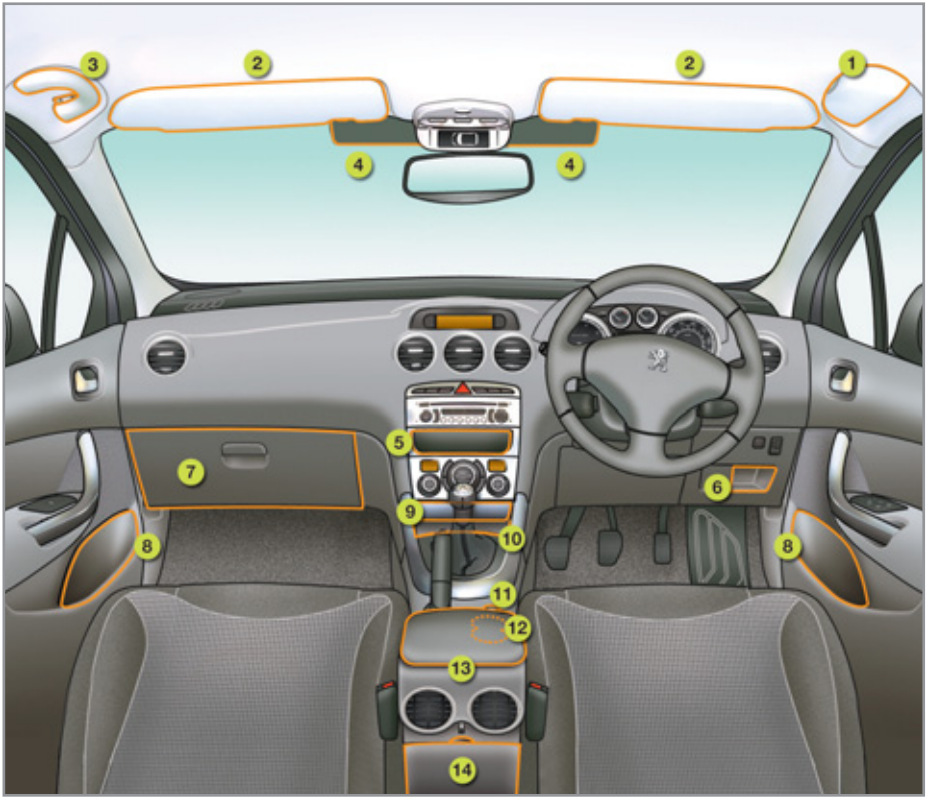
BOOT LAMP



This comes on automatically when the boot is opened and switches off automatically when the boot is closed.

i The lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- when the ignition is off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- when the engine is running, no limit.

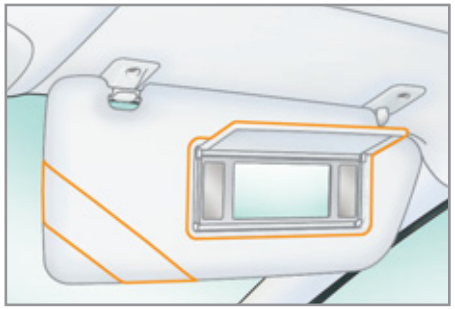


INTERIOR FITTINGS

1. **Spectacles storage**
2. **Sun visor**
   (see details on following page)
3. **Grab handle with coat hook**
4. **Toll card/car park ticket windows**
   (see details on following page)
5. **Storage compartment**
6. **Oddments box**
7. **Illuminated glove box**
   (see details on following page)
8. **Door pockets**
9. **Illuminated ashtray**
   (see details on following page)
10. **Storage compartment with non-slip mat**
11. **12 V accessories socket**
    (see details on following page)
12. **Cup holder**
13. **Front armrest**
    (see details on following page)
14. **Storage box**

SUN VISOR

Component which protects against sunlight from the front or the side, also equipped with an illuminated courtesy mirror.

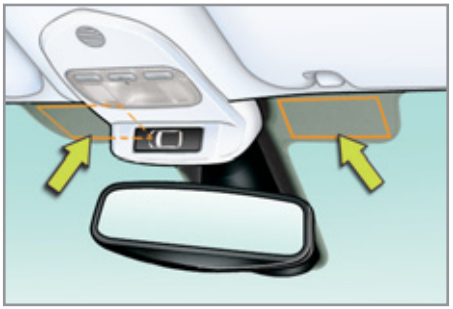


☞ With the ignition on, raise the concealing flap; the mirror is lit automatically.

This sun visor is also equipped with a ticket holder.

TOLL CARD / CAR PARK TICKET WINDOWS

Facility for affixing toll cards and/or car park tickets.



These windows are located on each side of the base of the rear view mirror.

They are two non-reflective areas of the athermic windscreen.

i The athermic windscreen limits heating of the passenger compartment by reducing the effects of the sun's rays (ultra-violet). It consists of a reflective layer, which also blocks certain radio-electric signals (toll card payments, ...).

ILLUMINATED GLOVE BOX



Its lid has areas for storing a pen, a pair of spectacles, tokens, cards, a can...

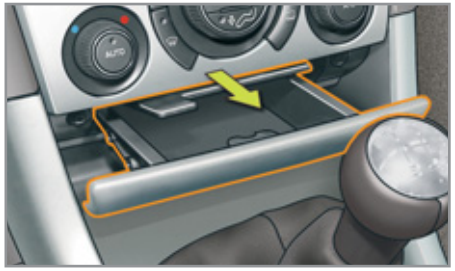
☞ To open the glove box, raise the handle.

The light comes on when the lid is opened.

If your vehicle is fitted with air conditioning, the glove box has an air vent **A**, which can be opened or closed. This distributes the same conditioned air as the vents in the passenger compartment.

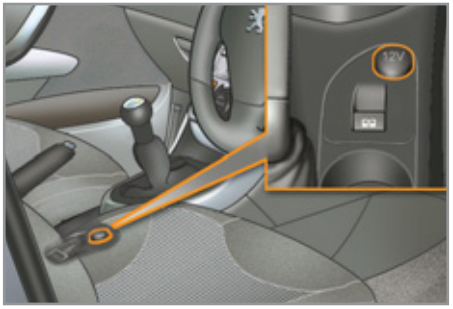
It also gives access to the dashboard fusebox (refer to the section "Practical information - § Changing a fuse").

ILLUMINATED ASHTRAY



- Pull the drawer for access to the ashtray.
- To empty the ashtray, after opening, press the tab and remove the ashtray.

12 V ACCESSORY SOCKET



- To connect a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 W), lift the cover and connect a suitable adaptor.

PEUGEOT CONNECT USB



This connection box, consisting of a USB port, is located in the front armrest.

It permits the connection of portable equipment, such as an iPod® digital audio player of generation 5 or later or a USB stick.

It reads the audio file formats (mp3, ogg, wma, wav...) which are transmitted to your audio equipment and played via the vehicle's speakers.

You can manage these files using the steering wheel controls or the audio equipment control panel and display them on the multifunction screen.

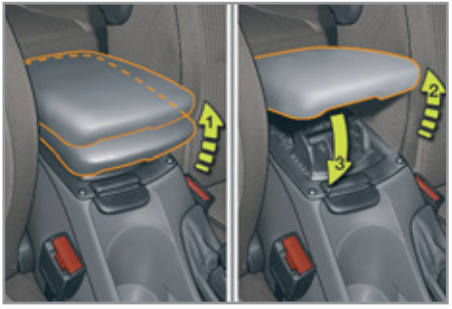
When it is in use, the portable equipment charges automatically.

For more information on the use of this equipment, refer to the "Audio and Telematics" section.

FRONT ARMREST

Comfort and storage device for the driver and front passenger.

The height and length of the armrest cover can be adjusted for greater comfort.



Height adjustment

- ☞ Raise the cover to the required position (low, intermediate or high).
- ☞ If you raise the cover slightly beyond the high position, guide it when lowering it to the low position.



Longitudinal adjustment

- ☞ Slide the cover fully forwards or rearwards.

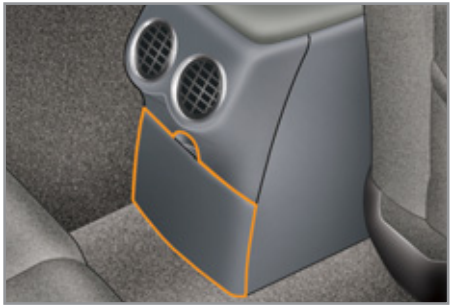
Storage



The armrest's compartment can hold up to 6 CDs.

- ☞ Raise the lever **1**.
- ☞ Raise the cover fully.

STORAGE BOX



Storage area, built into the rear of the front armrest, for the rear passengers.

- ☞ To empty the box, after opening, press the tab and remove it.

MATS

Removable carpet protection.

Fitting

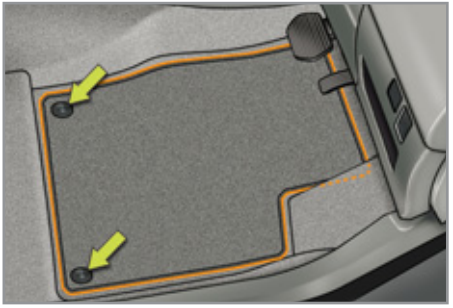
When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side use only the fixings provided in the wallet attached.

The other mats are simply placed on the carpet.

Removal

To remove the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ move the seat as far back as possible,
- ☞ unclip the fixings,
- ☞ remove the mat.



Refitting

To refit the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ position the mat correctly,
- ☞ refit the fixings by pressing,
- ☞ check that the mat is secured correctly.

! To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control / speed limiter.

STORAGE DRAWER



The storage drawer is located under the front passenger's seat.

Opening

- ☞ Raise the front of the drawer and pull it.

Removal

- ☞ Bring the drawer to the end of its travel.
- ☞ Press the ends of the slides.
- ☞ Raise the drawer and pull it fully.

Refitting

- ☞ Engage the drawer in its slides.
- ☞ At the end of its travel, press on the top of the drawer to secure it.

! Do not place heavy objects in the drawer.

REAR ARMREST

Comfort and storage device for the rear passengers.



- Lower the rear armrest for a more comfortable position.
- Raise the cover to gain access to its storage compartment.

This has a storage tray, two cup holders and two pen holders.

SKI FLAP

Arrangement for storing and transporting long objects.



Opening

- Lower the rear armrest.
- Pull the flap handle downwards.
- Lower the flap.
- Load the objects from inside the boot.

"AIRCRAFT" TYPE TABLES

Installed on the back of each front seat, these allow you to set down objects and each is equipped with a cup holder.



- To use the table, raise it fully until it locks in the high position.
- To store the table, lower it, passing the point of resistance, to the low position.

! On the passenger side, do not forget to fold the "aircraft" type table before placing the seat in the table position.

Do not place hard or heavy objects on the table. They could become dangerous projectiles in the event of emergency braking or impact.



BOOT FITTINGS

1. **Rear parcel shelf**
   (see details on following page)
2. **Hooks**
   (see details on following page)
3. **Stowing rings**
4. **Luggage retaining strap**
5. **Enclosed storage tray**
6. **Open storage tray**
7. **Storage box**
   (see details on following page)

Rear parcel shelf



To remove the shelf:

☞ unhook the two cords,

☞ raise the shelf slightly, then remove it.

There are several options for storing the shelf:

- either upright behind the front seats,
- or flat at the base of the boot.

Hooks



The hooks can be used to secure shopping bags.



Access to the storage box

An additional hook under the shelf is used to hold up the boot floor using its cord, to facilitate access to the tools and spare wheel or the temporary puncture repair kit...

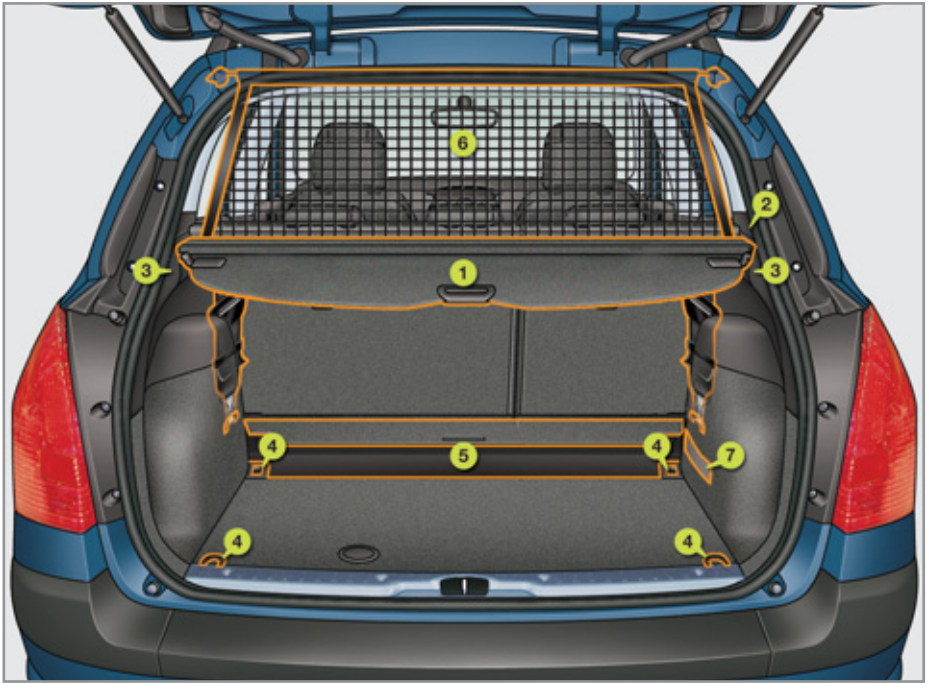
Storage box



☞ Raise the boot carpet for access to the storage box.

This has areas for the storage a box of spare bulbs, a first aid kit, two warning triangles...

It also contains the vehicle tools, the temporary puncture repair kit...



BOOT FITTINGS

1. **Rear parcel shelf**
   (see details on following page)
2. **12 V accessories socket**
   (see details on following page)
3. **Hooks**
   (see details on following page)
4. **Stowing rings**
5. **Storage tray**
6. **High load retaining net**
   (see details on following page)
7. **Luggage retaining strap**

Rear parcel shelf

This consists of four sections three of which can be folded back on each other.

There are several options for storing the rear parcel shelf:

- either folded back on itself near the rear seats (1),
- or folded back on itself and stored in a location provided under the rear seats (2).

To fold it from the boot:

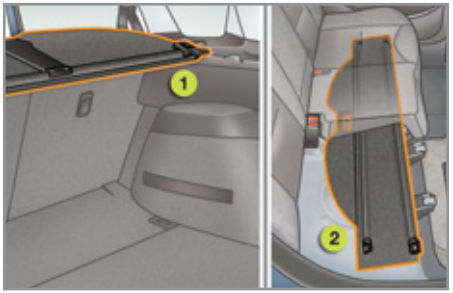
- ☞ unclip the load space cover from its side supports,
- ☞ take hold of the load space cover by its handle **A**,
- ☞ fold it concertina-style to the rear seats.

To unfold it from the boot:

- ☞ take hold of the load space cover by its handle **A**,
- ☞ unfold it to the boot pillars,
- ☞ clip the load space cover on its side supports.

i Maximum loads

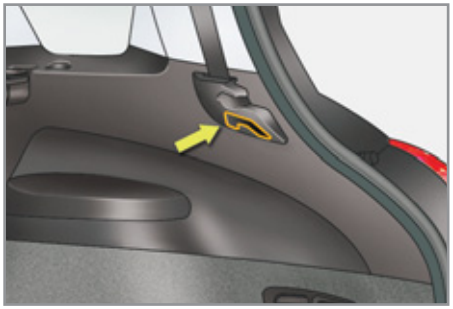
7.5 kg, rear parcel shelf unfolded with high load retaining net at row 2.







Hooks



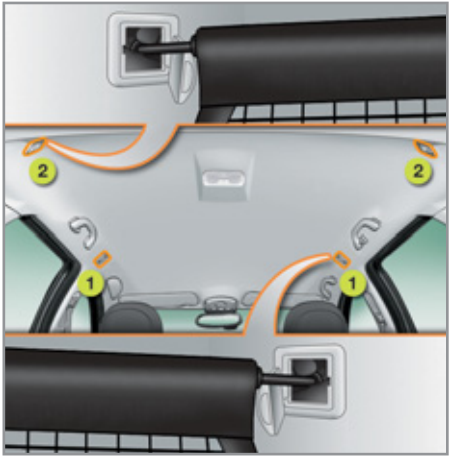
The hooks can be used to hold shopping bags.

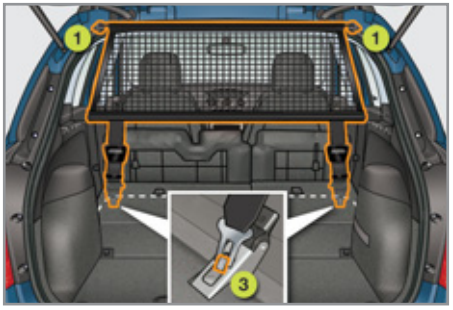
High load retaining net

Hooked onto the special upper and lower fixings, this permits use of the entire loading volume up to the roof:

- behind the rear seats (row 2),
- behind the front seats (row 1) when the rear seats are folded.

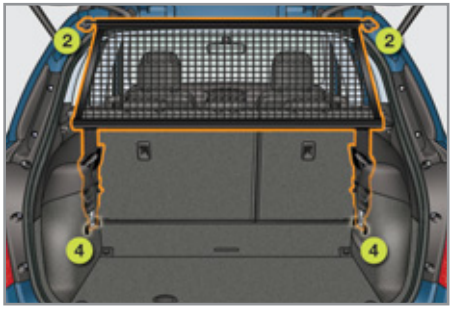
When positioning the net, check that the strap loops are visible from the boot; this will make slackening or tightening easier.





To use it in row 1:

- open the covers of the upper fixings **1**,
- unroll the high load retaining net,
- position one of the ends of the net's metal bar in the corresponding upper fixing **1**, then do the same with the other end,
- slacken the straps fully,
- fix the snap hook of each of the straps on the corresponding bar **3**, located under the cushion of the rear seats,
- fold the rear seats,
- tighten the straps,
- check that the net is hooked and tightened correctly.



To use it in row 2:

- fold or remove the load space cover,
- open the covers of the upper fixings **2**,
- unroll the high load retaining net,
- position one of the ends of the net's metal bar in the corresponding upper fixing **2**, then do the same with the other end,
- fix the snap hook of each of the straps in the corresponding ring **4**, located on the rear seats mechanism support,
- tighten the straps,
- check that the net is hooked and tightened correctly.

This net can be stored in the storage tray on the floor.



BOOT FITTINGS

1. **Load space screen**
   (see details on following page)
2. **Storage box**
3. **12 V accessory socket**
   (see details on following page)
4. **Hooks**
   (see details on following page)
5. **Stowing rings**
6. **High load retaining net**
   (see details on following page)
7. **Rear armrests with cup holder**
8. **Luggage retaining strap**
9. **Location for torch or for Hi-Fi amplifier**
   (see details on following page)
10. **Temporary puncture repair kit**

Load space screen

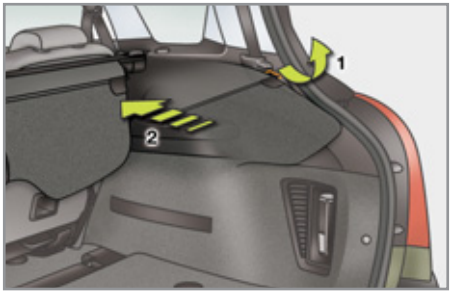
To remove the load space screen:

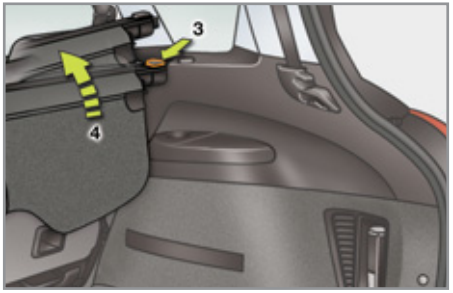
- ☞ remove the load space screen guides from the rails on the boot pillars,
- ☞ roll up the load space screen in its roller,
- ☞ pull and support the catch at one of the ends of the roller to release it,
- ☞ remove the roller from its support from the released end, then from the second.

To install the load space screen:

- ☞ position one of the ends of the roller in its support,
- ☞ insert the second end in its support; the catch locks automatically,
- ☞ unroll the load space screen to the boot pillars,
- ☞ insert the load space screen guides in the rails on the boot pillars.

To store the load space screen, place it at the boot sill, roller uppermost and flap facing inwards.







High load retaining net

Hooked onto the special upper and lower fixings, this permits use of the entire loading volume up to the roof behind the seats of the 2nd row.



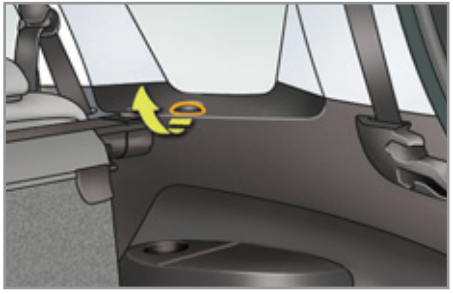
When positioning the net, check that the strap loops are visible from the boot; this will make slackening or tightening easier.



To use the net in the 2nd row (additional seats folded or removed):

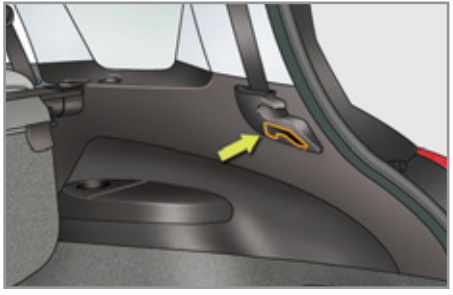
- roll up or remove the load space screen,
- open the covers of the upper fixings **1**,
- unroll the high load retaining net,
- position one of the ends of the net's metal bar in the corresponding upper fixing **1**, then do the same with the other end,
- attach the snap hook of each of the net's straps in the corresponding ring **2**, located on the lower fixing of the rear side seat belt,
- tighten the straps,
- check that the net is hooked and tightened correctly.

12 V accessory socket



- To connect a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 W), remove the cap and connect an appropriate adaptor.
- Turn the key to the ignition on position.

Hooks

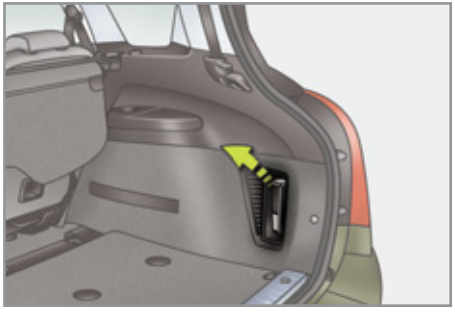


The hooks can be used to hold shopping bags.

Torch

This is a removable lamp, fitted in the boot wall, which can be used to light the boot or as a torch.

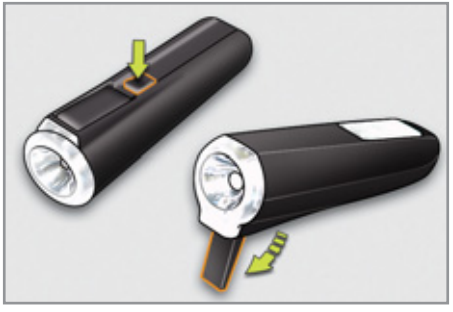
For the boot lamp function, refer to the "Visibility - § Boot lamp" section.



Operation

This torch operates with NiMH type rechargeable batteries.

It has a battery life of approximately 45 minutes and charges while you are driving.



Use

- ☞ Extract the torch from its location pulling it upwards.
- ☞ Press the switch, located on the back, to switch the torch on or off.
- ☞ Unfold the support, located on the back, to set down and raise the torch; for example, when changing a wheel.

Storing

- ☞ Put the torch back in place in its location starting with the lower part.

  If you have forgotten to switch off the torch, this switches it off automatically.

Side blinds

Fitted on the rear windows of the 2nd row, these protect your young children from the sun.



- ☞ Pull the blind by the central tab.
- ☞ Position the blind attachments on the corresponding hooks.

! Observe the polarities when fitting the rechargeable batteries.

Never replace the rechargeable batteries with normal disposable batteries.

i It the torch is not engaged correctly, it may not charge and may not come on when the boot is opened.

GENERAL POINTS RELATING TO CHILD SEATS

Although one of PEUGEOT's main criteria when designing your vehicle, the safety of your children also depends on you.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- in accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings*,
- **statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats,**
- **a child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the "rearwards-facing" position both in the front and in the rear.**

PEUGEOT recommends that children should travel in the **rear seats** of your vehicle:

- **"rearwards-facing"** up to the age of 2,
- **"forwards-facing"** over the age of 2.

CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT

"Rearwards-facing"

When a "rearwards-facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, it is essential that the passenger airbag is deactivated. Otherwise, **the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were to inflate**.

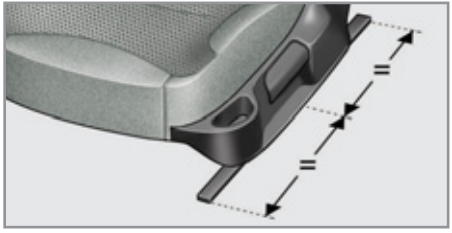


"Forwards-facing"

When a "forwards-facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to the intermediate longitudinal position with the seat back upright and leave the passenger airbag activated.



Intermediate longitudinal position



* The rules for carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the current legislation in your country.

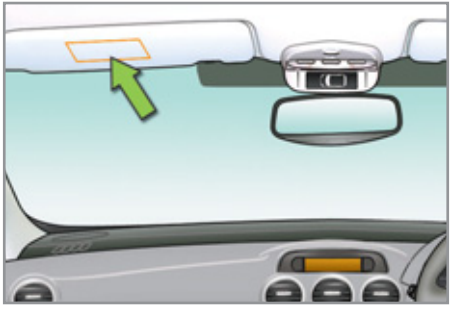


Passenger airbag OFF





Refer to the advice given on the label present on both sides of the passenger's sun visor.



! To assure the safety of your child, you must deactivate the passenger's front airbag when you install a child seat in the rearwards facing position on the front passenger's seat.

Otherwise, there is a risk that the child could be seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

CHILD SEATS RECOMMENDED BY PEUGEOT

PEUGEOT offers a complete range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three point seat belt**:

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg	Groups 1, 2 and 3: from 9 to 36 kg
 **L1** "RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus" Installed in the rearwards-facing position.	 **L2** "KIDDY Comfort Pro" The impact shield must be used for carrying young children (from 9 to 18 kg).

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg	
 **L3** "RECARO Start"	 **L4** "KLIPPAN Optima" From the age of 6 years (approximately 22 kg), the booster is used on its own.



L5
"RÖMER KIDFIX"
Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings.
The child is restrained by the seat belt.



LOCATIONS FOR CHILD SEATS SECURED USING THE SEAT BELT

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved (a) in relation to the weight of the child and the seat in the vehicle.

Seat	**Weight of the child /** indicative age			
	Less than 13 kg (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to ≈ 1 year	**From 9 to 18 kg** (group 1) From 1 to ≈ 3 years	**From 15 to 25 kg** (group 2) From 3 to ≈ 6 years	**From 22 to 36 kg** (group 3) From 6 to ≈ 10 years
Front passenger seat (c)				
- fixed 	**U(R1)**	**U(R1)**	**U(R1)**	**U(R1)**
- height adjustable	**U(R2)**	**U(R2)**	**U(R2)**	**U(R2)**
Outer rear seats 	**U**	**U***	**U***	**U***
Centre rear seat 	**U**	**U***	**U***	**U***

(a) Universal child seat: child seat which can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.
(b) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Infant car seats and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.
(c) Consult the legislation in force in your country before installing your child on this seat.
U: seat suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved "rear facing" and/or "forward facing".
U(R1): identical to **U**, with the vehicle's seat adjusted to the intermediate longitudinal position.
U(R2): identical to **U**, with the vehicle's seat adjusted to the highest position and moved back fully.

* The seat's head restraint must be removed and stored.

LOCATION OF CHILD SEATS SECURED USING THE SEAT BELT

In accordance with the European regulation, this table indicates the options for the installation of child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved (a) depending on the weight of the child and the seat in the vehicle.

Seat		Weight of the child /indicative age			
		Below 13 kg (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to ≈ 1 year	**9 to 18 kg** (group 1) From 1 to ≈ 3 years	**15 to 25 kg** (group 2) From 3 to ≈ 6 years	**22 to 36 kg** (group 3) From 6 to ≈ 10 years
1st row	Front passenger seat (c) - fixed - height adjustable 	**U(R1)** **U(R2)**	**U(R1)** **U(R2)**	**U(R1)** **U(R2)**	**U(R1)** **U(R2)**
2nd row	Outer Seat in standard position and moved inwards 	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**
	Centre Centre seat 	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**
3rd row	Outer Additional seat 	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**
	Outer 2nd row seat 	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**

(a) Universal child seat: child seat which can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.

(b) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Infant car seats and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.

(c) Consult the current legislation in your country before installing your child on this seat.

U: seat suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved, "rear facing" and/or "forwards facing".

U(R1): identical to **U**, with the vehicle's seat adjusted to the intermediate longitudinal position.

U(R2): identical to **U**, with the vehicle's seat adjusted to its highest position and moved back fully.

ADVICE ON CHILD SEATS

The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harnesses keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.

When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of your vehicle. If your passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.

For optimum installation of the "forwards-facing" child seat, ensure that the back of the child seat is in contact with the back of the vehicle's seat and that the head restraint does not cause any discomfort.

If the head restraint has to be removed, ensure that it is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking.

Children under the age of 10 must not travel in the "forwards-facing" position on the front passenger seat, unless the rear seats are already occupied by other children, cannot be used or are absent.

Deactivate the passenger airbag when a "rearwards-facing" child seat is installed on the front seat.

Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were to inflate.

Installing a booster seat

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.

Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.

PEUGEOT recommends the use of a booster seat which has a back, fitted with a seat belt guide at shoulder level.

As a safety precaution, do not leave:

- a child or children alone and unsupervised in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the "Child lock".

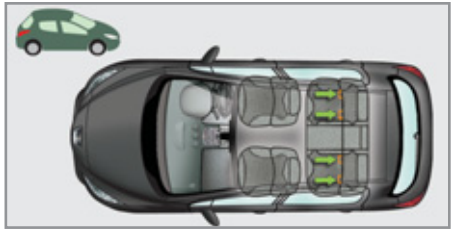
Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.

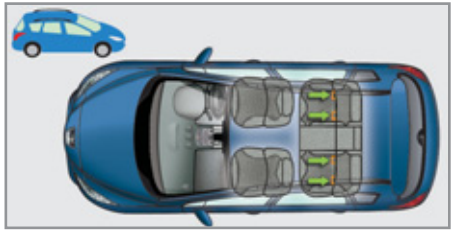
To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

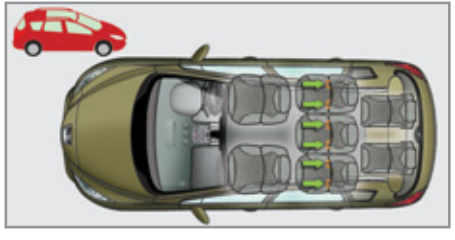
"ISOFIX" MOUNTINGS

Your vehicle has been approved in accordance with the **new ISOFIX regulation**.

The seats, represented below, are fitted with regulation ISOFIX mountings:







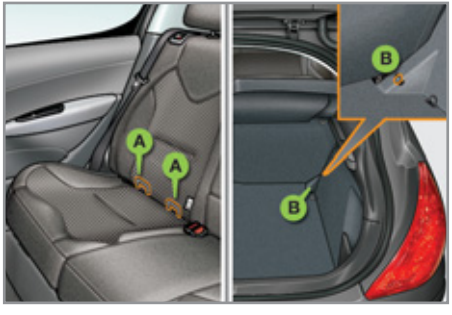
The Isofix mountings are three rings for each seat:

- two rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat back and cushion, indicated by a label,
- a ring **B**, located behind the seat, referred to as the **TOP TETHER** for fixing the upper strap.

i When installing an ISOFIX child seat in the left hand rear position of the bench seat, before fitting the child seat, first move the centre rear seat belt towards the middle of the vehicle so as to avoid the child seat interfering with the operation of the seat belt.



Rear seats



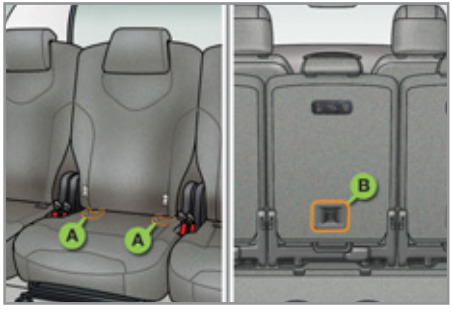


Rear seats





Rear seats of the 2nd row



This ISOFIX mounting system ensures fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.

The **ISOFIX child seats** are fitted with two locks which are secured easily on the two rings **A**.

Some also have an **upper strap** (or top tether) which is attached to ring **B**.

To attach this strap, raise the vehicle seat's head restraint then pass the hook between its rods. Then fix the hook on ring **B** and tighten the upper strap.

! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

i For information regarding the ISOFIX child seats which can be installed in your vehicle, consult the summary table for the location of the ISOFIX child seats.

ISOFIX CHILD SEATS RECOMMENDED BY PEUGEOT AND APPROVED FOR YOUR VEHICLE

FAIR Bimbofix ISOFIX (size category: **C** or **A**)

Group 0/1: up to 18 kg



Can be installed facing forward or rearward using an ISOFIX base which is attached to the rings **A** and includes a stay which extends down to the floor of the vehicle.

6 seat body angle positions.

Can be installed facing forward, attached to the seat using a three-point seat belt.

RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX (size category: **B1**)

Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg



Is installed in the forward-facing position.

Is attached to the rings **A** and the upper ring **B**, referred to as the Top Tether, using an upper strap.

Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying down.

Can be installed facing forward, attached to the seat using a three-point seat belt.

Follow the instructions for fitting child seats contained in the seat manufacturer's installation guide.



LOCATIONS FOR ISOFIX CHILD SEATS

In accordance with European Regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings.
In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

	Weight of the child / indicative age										
	Less than 10 kg (group 0) Up to approx. 6 months		**Less than 10 kg (group 0) Less than 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to approx. 1 year			**From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From approx. 1 to 3 years					
Type of ISOFIX child seat	**Infant car seat***		**"rear facing"**			**"rear facing"**		**"forward facing"**			
ISOFIX size category	**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**	
ISOFIX child seats universal and semi-universal which can be installed on the rear outer seats	**IL-SU****		**IL-SU**			**IL-SU**		**IUF IL-SU**			

IUF: seat suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **U**niversal seat, "**F**orward facing" secured using the upper strap.
IL-SU: seat suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **S**emi-**U**niversal seat either:
- "rear facing" fitted with an upper strap or a stay,
- "forward facing" fitted with a stay,
- an infant car seat fitted with an upper strap or a stay.

For advice on securing of the upper strap, refer to the paragraph "ISOFIX mountings".

* Infant car seats and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.
** The ISOFIX infant car seat, secured on the lower rings of a vehicle ISOFIX seat, occupies two rear seats.



LOCATIONS FOR ISOFIX CHILD SEATS

In accordance with European Regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings.

In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

		Weight of the child / indicative age										
		Less than 10 kg (group 0) Up to approx. 6 months		**Less than 10 kg (group 0) Less than 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to approx. 1 year			**From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From approx. 1 to 3 years				
Type of ISOFIX child seat		**Infant car seat***		**"rear facing"**			**"rear facing"**		**"forward facing"**		
ISOFIX size category		**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**
Rear ISOFIX seats; 2nd row seat	**Side**	**IL-SU**		**IL-SU**			**IL-SU**		**IUF IL-SU**		
	Centre	**X**		**IL-SU**			**IL-SU**		**IUF IL-SU**		
	Outer, moved inwards	**X**		**IL-SU**			**IL-SU**		**IUF IL-SU**		
Rear ISOFIX seats; 2nd row seat installed in the 3rd row	**Outer**	**X**		**X**			**X**		**IUF IL-SU**		

IUF: seat suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **U**niversal seat, "**F**orward facing" secured using the upper strap.
IL-SU: seat suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **S**emi-**U**niversal seat either:
- "rear facing" fitted with an upper strap or a stay,
- "forward facing" fitted with a stay,
- an infant car seat fitted with an upper strap or a stay.

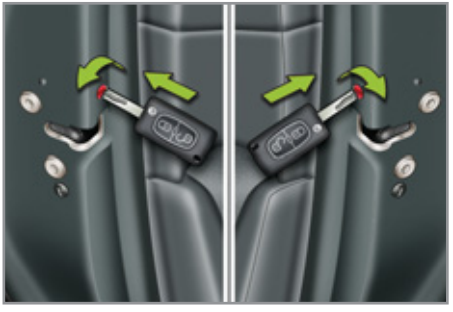
For advice on securing of the upper strap, refer to the "ISOFIX mountings" paragraph.
X: seat not suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX seat of the size category indicated.
* Infant car seats and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.

MANUAL CHILD LOCK

Mechanical system to prevent opening of the rear door using its interior control.

The control is located on the edge of each rear door.

Locking



☞ Using the ignition key, turn the red control as far as it will go:

- to the left on the left-hand rear door,
- to the right on the right-hand rear door.

Unlocking

☞ Using the ignition key, turn the red control as far as it will go:

- to the right on the left-hand rear door,
- to the left on the right-hand rear door.

ELECTRIC CHILD LOCK

Remote control system to prevent opening of the rear doors using their interior controls and use of the rear electric windows.

The control is located on the driver's door, with the electric window controls.

Activation



☞ Press this button.

The indicator lamp on the button comes on, accompanied by a message in the multifunction screen.

This indicator lamp remains on until the child lock is deactivated.

Deactivation

☞ Press the button again.

The indicator lamp on the button switches off, accompanied by a message in the multifunction screen.

This indicator lamp remains off until the child lock is activated.

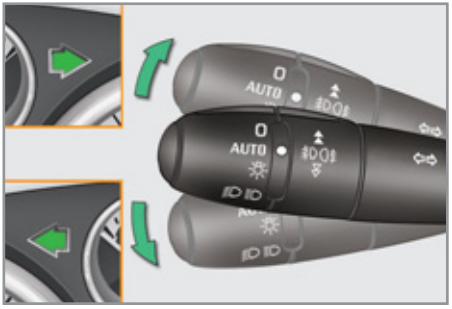
! This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control.

Check the status of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition.

Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

In the event of a serious impact, the electric child lock is deactivated automatically to permit the exit of the rear passengers.

DIRECTION INDICATORS



- Left: lower the lighting stalk passing the point of resistance.
- Right: raise the lighting stalk passing the point of resistance.

If you forget to cancel the direction indicators for more than twenty seconds, the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 40 mph (60 km/h).

HAZARD WARNING LAMPS

A visual warning by means of the direction indicators to alert other road users to a vehicle breakdown, towing or accident.



- Press this button, the direction indicators flash.

They can operate with the ignition off.

Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically.

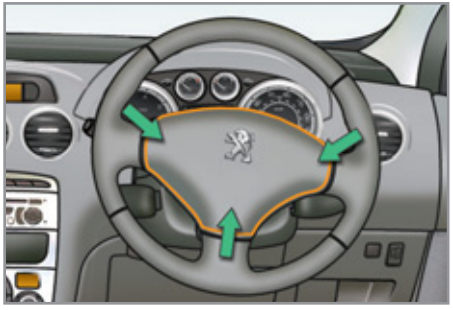
They switch off automatically the first time you accelerate.

- You can also switch them off by pressing the button.

On vehicles fitted with the 1.6 litre THP 200 hp petrol engine, deactivating the ESP/ASR systems also deactivates the automatic operation of the hazard warning lamps; refer to the section "Trajectory control systems - § Deactivation".

HORN

Audible warning to alert other road users to an imminent danger.



- Press one of the spokes of the steering wheel.

Use the horn moderately and only in the following cases:

- immediate danger,
- when approaching an area where there is no visibility.

TYRE UNDER-INFLATION DETECTION

System which automatically and continuously checks the pressure of the tyres while driving.



Sensors fitted in each valve trigger a warning in the event of problem (speed above 12 mph (20 km/h)).

The tyre under-inflation detection system is an aid to driving which does not replace the need for the driver to be vigilant or to drive responsibly.

Under-inflated tyre

This warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel and/or a message appears in the screen, accompanied by an audible signal, to identify the wheel concerned.

☞ Check the tyre pressures as soon as possible.

This check must be carried out when the tyres are cold.

Puncture

The **STOP** warning lamp comes on and/or this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen identifying the wheel concerned.

☞ Stop as soon as it is safe to do so, avoiding any sudden movement of the steering wheel and the brakes.

☞ Repair or change the damaged wheel (punctured or very deflated tyre), and have the tyre pressure checked as soon as possible.

Sensor(s) not detected or faulty

This warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel and/or a message appears in the screen, accompanied by an audible signal, to locate the wheel or wheels which are not detected or to indicate a malfunction of the system.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to replace the faulty sensor(s).

This message is also displayed when one of the wheels is away from the vehicle (being repaired) or when one or more wheels without a sensor are fitted.

If your vehicle is equipped with a spare wheel, this is not fitted with a sensor.

All repairs and changing of tyres on a wheel fitted with this system must be carried out by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

If, when changing a tyre, you fit a wheel which is not detected by your vehicle (example: fitting of snow tyres), you must have the system reinitialised by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

This system does not avoid the need to have the tyre pressures checked regularly (refer to the "Identification markings" section) to ensure that the optimum dynamic performance of the vehicle is maintained and prevent premature wear of the tyres, particularly in arduous driving conditions (heavy load, high speed).

The tyre pressures must be checked cold, at least once a month. Remember to check the pressure of the spare wheel.

The tyre under-inflation detection system may experience temporary interference due to electro-magnetic emissions on a frequency close to that used by the system.

EMERGENCY OR ASSISTANCE CALL



This system allows you to make an emergency or assistance call to the emergency services or to the dedicated PEUGEOT service.

For more information on the use of this function, refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

BRAKING ASSISTANCE SYSTEMS

Group of supplementary systems which help you to obtain optimum braking in complete safety in emergency situations:

- anti-lock braking system (ABS),
- electronic brake force distribution (EBFD),
- emergency braking assistance (EBA).

Anti-lock braking system and electronic brake force distribution

Linked systems which improve the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking, in particular on poor or slippery surfaces.

Activation

The anti-lock braking system comes into operation automatically when there is a risk of wheel lock.

Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibration of the brake pedal.

! When braking in an emergency, press very firmly without releasing the pressure.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, it indicates a malfunction of the anti-lock braking system which could result in loss of control of the vehicle when braking.

If this warning lamp comes on, together with the **STOP** and **ABS** warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, it indicates a malfunction of the electronic brake force distribution which could result in loss of control of the vehicle when braking.

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.

In either case, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i When replacing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that they conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Emergency braking assistance

System which, in an emergency, enables you to obtain the optimum braking pressure more quickly, thus reducing the stopping distance.

Activation

It is triggered by the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed.

The effect of this is a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

! When braking in an emergency, press firmly without releasing the pressure.

TRAJECTORY CONTROL SYSTEMS

Anti-slip regulation (ASR) and electronic stability programme (ESP)

The anti-slip regulation (also known as Traction Control) optimises traction to prevent skidding of the wheels, by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine.

The electronic stability programme acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to keep the vehicle on the trajectory required by the driver, within the limits of the laws of physics.

Activation

These systems are activated automatically each time the vehicle is started.

They come into operation in the event of a grip or trajectory problem.



This is indicated by flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel.



Deactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground, ...), it may be advisable to deactivate the ASR and ESP systems, so that the wheels can move freely and regain grip.

☞ Press the **"ESP OFF"** button, located in the middle of the dashboard.



If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the indicator lamp in the button come on, this indicates that the ASR and ESP systems are deactivated.

On vehicles fitted with the 1.6 litre THP 200 hp engine, this action also deactivates the automatic operation of hazard warning lamps.

Reactivation

These systems are reactivated automatically each time the ignition is switched back on or from 30 mph (50 km/h) (except in the case of the 1.6 litre THP 200 hp petrol engine).

☞ Press the **"ESP OFF"** button again to reactivate them manually.

On vehicles fitted with the 1.6 litre THP 200 hp engine, this action also reactivates the automatic operation of hazard warning lamps.

Operating fault



If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, this indicates a malfunction of these systems.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The ESP/ASR systems offer exceptional safety in normal driving, but this should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

The correct functioning of these systems depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations on:

- wheels (tyres and rims),
- braking components,
- electronic components,
- repair and assembly procedures.

After an impact, have these systems checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

SEAT BELTS

Front seat belts

The front seat belts are fitted with a pretensioning and force limiting system.

This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact. Depending on the severity of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.

The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on.

The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, so improving their protection.

Fastening

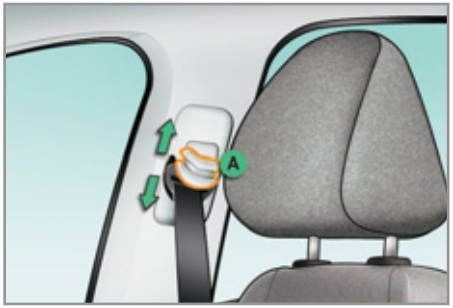


- Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- Press the red button on the buckle.
- Guide the seat belt as it reels in.

Height adjustment



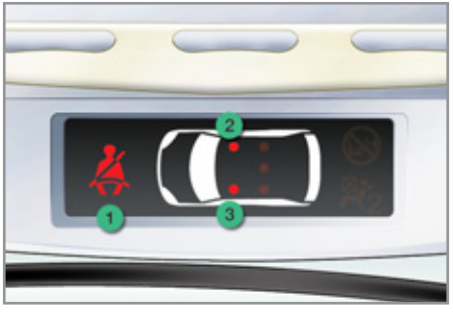
- To lower the attachment point, squeeze the control **A** and slide it downwards.
- To raise the attachment point, slide the control **A** upwards.

Seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamp

When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on, either on the instrument panel or on the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display, if the driver and/or the front passenger has not fastened their seat belt.

From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) this warning lamp flashes for two minutes accompanied by an audible signal of increasing volume. Once these two minutes have elapsed, this warning lamp remains on until the driver and/or the front passenger fastens their seat belt.

Seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamps display



1. Front seat belts not fastened / unfastened warning lamp.
2. Driver's seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamp.
3. Front passenger's seat belt not fastened / unfastened or unfastened warning lamp*.

The corresponding warning lamp **2** or **3** comes on in red on the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display if the seat belt is not fastened or is unfastened.



Rear seat belts

The rear seats are each fitted with a three-point seat belt with pretensioner and for the side seats a force limiter.

Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.
- ☞ On the outer seat belts, raise the bar to the top of the backrest to prevent the tongue from knocking against the side trim.

* According to version and/or country.

2nd row rear seat belts

The rear seats are each fitted with a three-point seat belt, with force limiter and, for the outer seats, a pretensioner.

Fastening

- Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

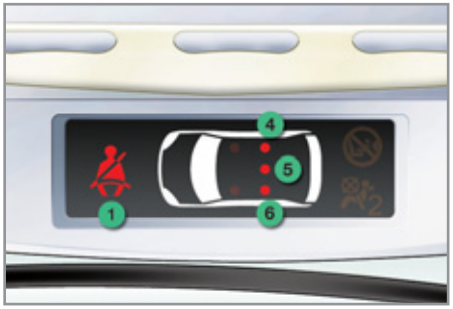
- Press the red button on the buckle.
- Guide the seat belt as it reels in.
- On the outer seat belts, raise the bar to the top of the backrest to prevent the tongue from knocking against the side trim.

Seat belt unfastened warning lamp

This warning lamp comes on, either on the instrument panel or on the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display, when one or more rear passengers unfasten their seat belt.

From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), this warning lamp flashes for two minutes accompanied by an audible signal of increasing volume. Once these two minutes have elapsed, this warning lamp remains on until the one or more rear passengers fasten their seat belt.

Seat belt unfastened warning lamps display



1. Rear seat belts unfastened warning lamp.
4. Rear right seat belt warning lamp.
5. Rear centre seat belt warning lamp.
6. Rear left seat belt warning lamp.

When the ignition is switched on, with the engine running or when the vehicle is moving at less than 12 mph (20 km/h), the corresponding warning lamps **4**, **5** and **6** come on in red for approximately 30 seconds, if the seat belt is not fastened.

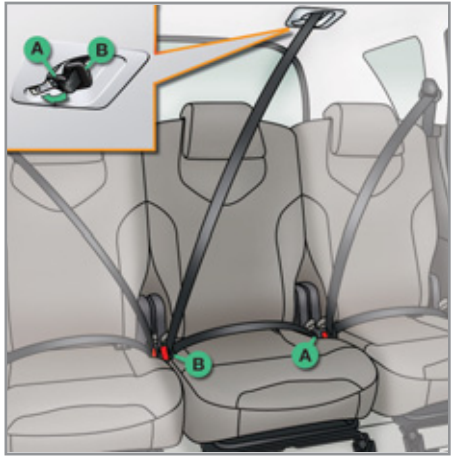
When the vehicle is moving at more than 12 mph (20 km/h), the corresponding warning lamp **4**, **5** or **6** comes on in red, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen, if a rear passenger has unfastened their seat belt.

2nd row rear centre seat belt

The seat belt for the rear centre seat of the 2nd row is located at the rear left of the roof.

Installation

- Pull the strap and insert the tongue **A** in the left-hand buckle.
- Insert the tongue **B** in the right-hand buckle.
- Check the fastening of each buckle by pulling the strap.



Removal and storing

- Press the red button on the buckle **B**, then on the buckle **A**.
- Guide the strap as it reels in and bring the tongue **B**, then **A** onto the magnet of the attachment point on the roof.

If the two outer seats of the 2nd row are moved inwards, always use the outer rear seat belts.

3rd row rear seat belts

The seat belts for the rear seats of the 3rd row are located at the corner of the corresponding boot pillar and roof.

Installation

- Pull the strap and insert the tongue **C** in the buckle, on the boot side trim side.
- Insert the tongue **D** in the opposite buckle.
- Check the fastening of each buckle by pulling the strap.



Removal and storing

- Press the red button on the buckle **D**, then on the buckle **C**.
- Guide the strap as it reels in and bring the tongue **D**, then **C** onto the magnet of the attachment point on the corresponding boot pillar.

The 3rd row of seats (SW with individual rear seats) is not fitted with seat belt unfastened warning lamps.

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all restrained securely before setting off.

Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.

Do not interchange the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfil their role fully.

The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stowed automatically when not in use.

Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.

The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.

The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.

The inertia reels are fitted with an automatic locking device which comes into operation in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. You can release the device by pulling firmly on the strap and releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:

- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not bear any trace of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide.

Have your seat belts checked regularly by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.

Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by PEUGEOT dealers.

After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.

Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one person.

Never allow a child to travel on your lap.

In the event of an impact

Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impact, the pretensioning device may be deployed before and independently of the airbags. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.

Following an impact, have the seat belts system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

AIRBAGS

System designed to maximise the safety of the occupants (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of violent collisions. It supplements the action of the force-limiting seat belts (with the exception of the rear centre passenger).

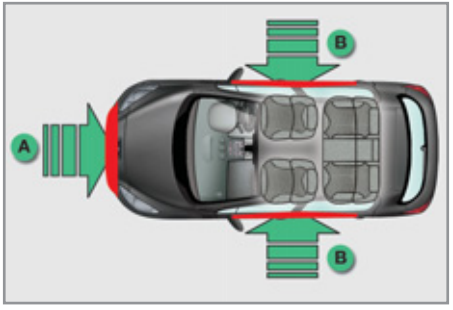
If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the case of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and protect the occupants of the vehicle (with the exception of the rear centre passenger); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain roll-over conditions, the airbags will not be deployed; the seat belt alone is sufficient to provide optimum protection in these situations.

! The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

Impact detection zones



A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

i Deployment of the airbag(s) is accompanied by a slight emission of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

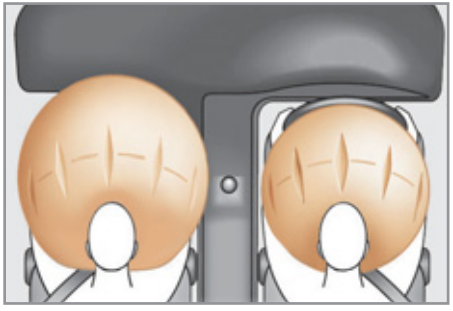
This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation.

The noise of the detonation may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front airbags

System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the head and thorax.

The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.



Deployment

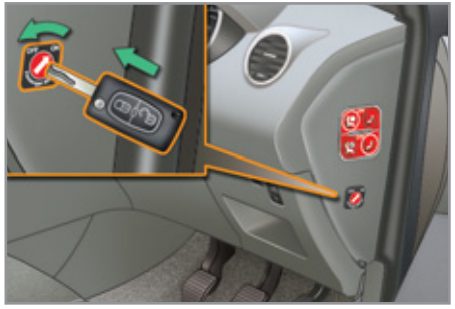
The airbags are deployed simultaneously, unless the passenger's front airbag is deactivated, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.

The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side to cushion their forward movement.

Deactivation

Only the passenger's front airbag can be deactivated:

- **with the ignition off**, insert the key in the passenger airbag deactivation switch,
- turn it to the **"OFF"** position,
- then, remove the key keeping the switch in the new position.



According to version, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and/or in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display when the ignition is on and until the airbag is reactivated.

! To assure the safety of your child, the passenger's front airbag must be deactivated when you install a "rear facing" child seat on the front passenger seat.

Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

Reactivation

When you remove the child seat, turn the switch to the **"ON"** position to reactivate the airbag and so assure the safety of your front passenger in the event of an impact.

With the ignition on, this warning lamp comes on in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display for approximately one minute, if the passenger's front airbag is activated.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible warning and a message in the screen, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

If this warning lamp flashes in the instrument panel and/or in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop. The passenger's front airbag may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

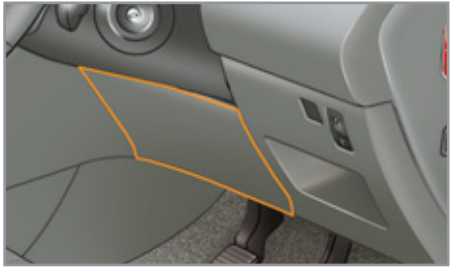
! If even one of the two airbag warning lamps comes on continuously, do not install a child seat on the front passenger seat.

Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Knee airbag*

System which protects the driver's knees in the event of a serious front impact.

This airbag is fitted in the dashboard below the steering column.



Deployment

It is deployed at the same time as the front airbags.

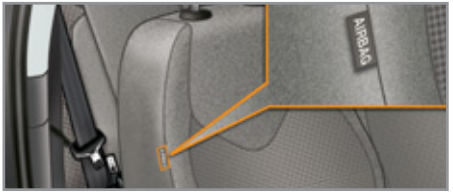
* According to country.

Lateral airbags

System which protects the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the chest.

Each lateral airbag is fitted:

- in the front, in the seat back frame, on the door side,
- in the rear, in the side trim (except SW models).



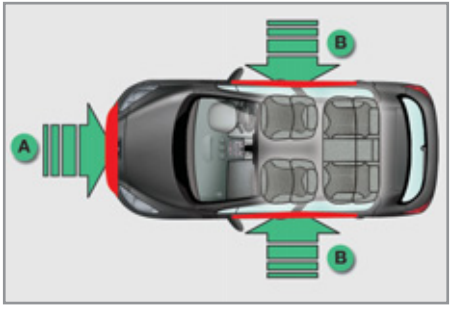


Deployment

The lateral airbags are deployed unilaterally in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The lateral airbag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the corresponding door trim panel.

Impact detection zones



A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

Curtain airbags

System which protects the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.

Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

The curtain airbag is deployed at the same time as the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The curtain airbag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the windows.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

! In the event of a minor impact or bump on the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbag may not be deployed.

In the event of a rear or front collision, the airbag is not deployed.

! For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the following safety rules:

Sit in a normal upright position.

Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.

Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object...). This could hamper the operation of the airbags or injure the occupants.

After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen or broken into, have the airbag systems checked.

All work on the airbag system must be carried out by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is deployed cannot be ruled out. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.

Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.

If possible, do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.

Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.

Knee airbag*

Do not sit with your knees any nearer to the steering wheel than necessary.

Lateral airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment the lateral airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, you can contact a PEUGEOT dealer (see "Practical information - § Accessories").

Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backs (clothing...). This could cause injury to the chest or arms if the lateral airbag is deployed.

Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

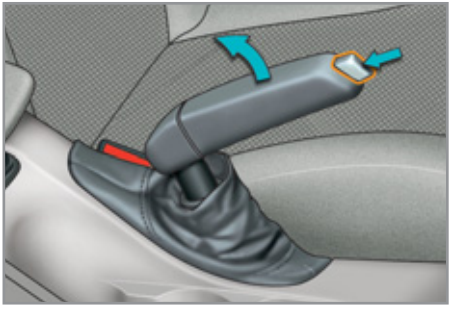
Curtain airbags

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof. This could cause injury to the head if the curtain airbag is deployed.

If fitted on your vehicle, do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

* According to country.

PARKING BRAKE



Applying

☞ Pull the parking brake lever fully up to immobilise your vehicle.

Releasing

☞ Pull the parking brake lever gently, press the release button then lower the lever fully.

When the vehicle is being driven, if this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen, this indicates that the parking brake is still on or has not been properly released.

! When parking on a slope, direct your wheels against the pavement, apply the parking brake and engage a gear.

6-SPEED MANUAL GEARBOX

Engaging 5th or 6th gear

☞ Move the lever fully to the right to engage 5th or 6th gear.

Engaging reverse gear

☞ Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear lever to the left then forwards.



! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

i As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:
- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

GEAR SHIFT INDICATOR*

System which reduces fuel consumption by advising the driver to change up on vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox.

Operation

The system intervenes only when driving economically.

Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one or more gears. You can follow this instruction without engaging the intermediate gears.

The gear engagement recommendations must not be considered compulsory. In fact, the configuration of the road, the amount of traffic and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the advice given by the system.

This function cannot be deactivated.

Example:

- You are in third gear.
- You press the accelerator pedal moderately.
- The system may suggest that you engage a higher gear, if appropriate.



The information appears in the instrument panel in the form of an arrow accompanied by the suggested gear.

In the case of driving which makes particular demands on the performance of the engine (firm pressure on the accelerator pedal, for example, when overtaking...), the system will not recommend a gear change.

The system never suggests:

- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse gear,
- engaging a lower gear.

* According to engine.

HILL START ASSIST*

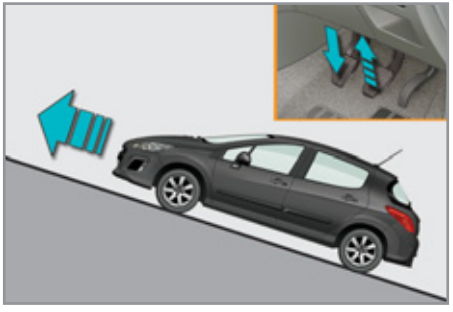
System which keeps your vehicle immobilised temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a gradient, the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

This function is only active when:

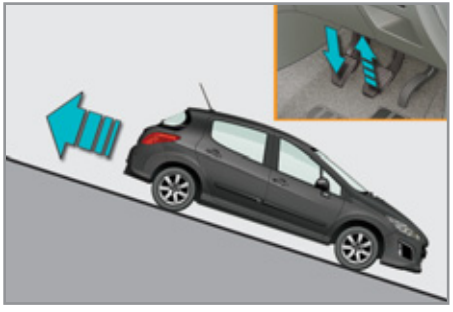
- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- in particular conditions on a slope,
- with the driver's door closed.

The hill start assist cannot be deactivated.

Operation



On an ascending slope, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a brief moment when you release the brake pedal and you are in first gear or neutral.



On a descending slope, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a brief moment when you release the brake pedal.

! Do not exit the vehicle while it is being held in the hill start assist phase.

If you need to exit the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and ensure that this warning lamp in the instrument panel is on fixed.

Operating fault

If a malfunction of the system occurs, these warning lamps come on. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

* Model fitted with the 1.6 litre THP 200 hp petrol engine.

6-SPEED ELECTRONIC GEAR CONTROL GEARBOX

Six-speed electronic gear control gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of automated operation or the pleasure of manual gear changing.

Two driving modes are offered:

- **automated** mode for automatic control of the gears by the gearbox, without any action on the part of the driver,
- **manual** mode for sequential changing of the gears by the driver using the gear lever or steering mounted control paddles.

With each of these two modes, a **Sport** function is available for a more dynamic style of driving.

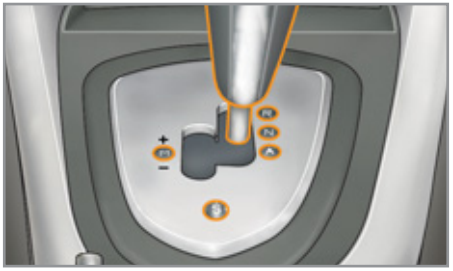
With the automated mode, you can temporarily take control of gear changing at any time.

This gearbox provides you with additional functions:

- hill start assist,
- creep* (movement of the vehicle on releasing the brake pedal) in automated mode or reverse.

* Model fitted with the 1.6 litre e-HDi PEF 112 hp Diesel engine.

Gear lever



R. Reverse

☞ With your foot on the brake, move the lever upwards to select this position.

N. Neutral.

☞ With your foot on the brake, select this position to start.

A. Automated mode.

☞ Move the lever downwards to select this mode.

M + / -. Sequential mode with manual changing of the gears.

☞ Move the lever downwards then to the left to select this mode, then:

- push the lever forwards to change up a gear,
- or pull the lever rearwards to change down a gear.

S. Sport function.

☞ Press this button to activate or deactivate this function.

Steering mounted control paddles



+. Change up control paddle to the right of the steering wheel.

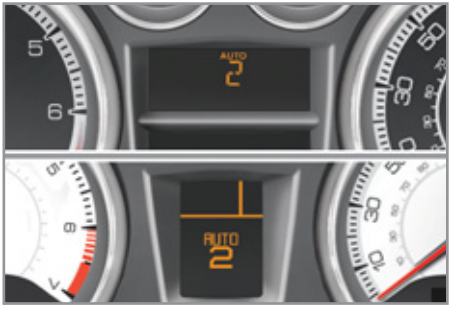
☞ Press the back of the **"+"** steering wheel control paddle to change up a gear.

-. Change down control paddle to the left of the steering wheel.

☞ Press the back of the **"-"** steering wheel control paddle to change down a gear.

The steering wheel control paddles do not permit the selection of neutral or engaging or disengaging reverse gear.

Displays in the instrument panel



Gear lever positions

N. Neutral
R. Reverse
1 2 3 4 5 6. Gears in sequential mode
AUTO. This comes on when the automated mode is selected. It switches off on changing to manual mode.
S. Sport (Sport function)

i An audible signal is heard when reverse gear is engaged.

Moving off

- Select position **N**.
- Press the brake pedal down fully.
- Start the engine.



N appears in the instrument panel screen.

- Select automated mode (position **A**), manual mode (position **M**) or reverse (position **R**).
- Release the parking brake.
- Progressively release the brake pedal.
  Vehicles with the 1.6 litre e-HDi PEF 112 hp Diesel engine then start to move.
- Accelerate away.

AUTO and **1**, **1** or **R** appear in the instrument panel screen.

i **N** flashes in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, if the gear lever is not in position **N** on starting.

The **Foot on the brake pedal** warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, if the brake pedal is not pressed on starting the engine

Automated mode

- Select position **A**.



AUTO and the gear engaged appear in the instrument panel screen.

The gearbox operates in auto-active mode, without any action on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear for:

- optimum fuel consumption,
- the style of driving,
- the profile of the road,
- the vehicle load.

For optimum acceleration, for example when overtaking another vehicle, press the accelerator pedal firmly past the point of resistance.

! Never select neutral **N** while the vehicle is moving.

Temporary manual control of gear changing

You can temporarily take over control of gear changing using the steering mounted "+" and "-" control paddles: if the engine speed allows, the request to change gear is accepted.



AUTO and the gear engaged is displayed in the instrument panel.

This function allows you to anticipate certain situations such as overtaking another vehicle or approaching a bend.

After a few moments without any action on the control paddles, the gearbox starts managing gear changes automatically again.

Manual mode

☞ Select position **M**.



The gears engaged appear in succession in the instrument panel screen.

The gear change requests are only carried out if the engine speed permits.

It is not necessary to release the accelerator during gear changes.

When braking or slowing down, the gearbox changes down automatically so that the vehicle picks up in the correct gear.

On sharp acceleration, the gearbox will not change up unless the driver acts on the gear lever or the steering mounted control paddles.

! Never select neutral **N** when the vehicle is moving.

It is possible to change mode at any time, by moving the gear lever from **A** to **M** or from **M** to **A**.

Sport function

☞ Following selection of the manual mode or automated mode, press button **S** to activate the Sport function which offers you a more dynamic style of driving.



S appears next to the gear engaged in the instrument panel screen.

☞ Press button **S** again to deactivate the function.

S is then cleared from the instrument panel screen.

i The Sport function is deactivated each time the ignition is switched off.

Reverse

To engage reverse, the vehicle must be stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal.

☞ Select position **R**.

At very low speed, if reverse gear is requested, this will only be taken into account when the vehicle is immobilised. The **Foot on the brake pedal** warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel to encourage you to brake.

At high speed, if reverse gear is requested, the **N** indicator lamp will flash and the gearbox will change to neutral automatically. To engage a gear again, return the lever to position **A** or **M**.

Hill start assist

This function allows temporary immobilisation of your vehicle.

It maintains the pressure of the brakes briefly, long enough for you to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

It comes into operation if the vehicle is immobilised by pressing the brake pedal and depending on the gradient:

- on an ascending gradient, with the vehicle stationary, gear lever in position **A** or **M**, the vehicle is held briefly when the brake pedal is released,
- on a descending gradient, with the vehicle stationary, gear lever in position **R**, the vehicle is held briefly when the brake pedal is released.

! Do not hold the vehicle using the accelerator: use the foot brake or the parking brake.

Never leave the vehicle during a hill start assist phase.

Creep function*

This function makes manoeuvring the vehicle much easier at low speeds (when parking, in traffic jams…).

After first placing the gear lever in position **A**, **M** or **R**, the vehicle starts moving as soon as you take your foot off the brake pedal.

! When the engine is idling, brakes released, if position **A**, **M** or **R** is selected, the vehicle moves even if you do not press the accelerator.

Never leave unsupervised children in the vehicle with the engine running.

Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, you can:

- move to position **N** to select neutral,

or

- leave the gear engaged; in this case the vehicle cannot be moved.

In both cases, it is essential that you apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.

! When immobilising the vehicle, with the engine running, you must place the gear lever in neutral **N**.

Before carrying out any work in the engine compartment, check that the gear lever is in neutral **N** and that the parking brake is applied.

Operating fault



With the ignition on, if this warning lamp comes on and **AUTO** flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, this indicates a malfunction of the gearbox.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

This warning lamp may also come on if a door is opened.



With the ignition on, if the warning lamp above and this warning lamp come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, this indicates a malfunction of the hill start assist system.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! It is essential to press the brake pedal when starting the engine.

When parking, is it essential to apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle, whatever the circumstances.

* Model fitted with the 1.6 litre e-HDi PEF 112 hp Diesel engine.

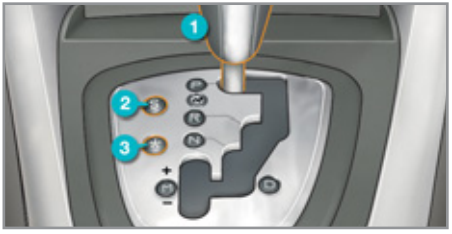
"PORSCHE TIPTRONIC SYSTEM" AUTOMATIC GEARBOX

Four or six speed automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation, enhanced by sport and snow programmes, or manual gear changing.

Two driving modes are provided:

- **automatic** operation for electronic management of the gears by the gearbox, with a **sport** programme to give a more dynamic driving style and a **snow** programme for improved driving in conditions of poor grip.
- **manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

Gear selection gate



1. Gear lever.
2. Button "**S**" **(sport)**.
3. Button "❄" **(snow)**.

Gear lever



P. Park.
- Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on or off.
- Starting the engine.

R. Reverse.
- Reversing manoeuvres, vehicle stationary, engine at idle.

N. Neutral.
- Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on.
- Starting the engine.

D. Automatic operation.

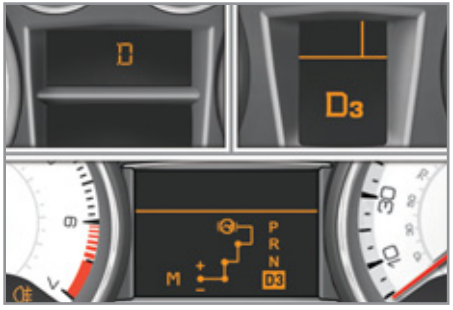
M.+ / - Manual operation with sequential changing of the four or six gears.

☞ Push forwards to change up through the gears.

or

☞ Pull rearwards to change down through the gears.

Displays in the instrument panel



When you move the lever in the gate to select a position, the corresponding indicator is displayed in the instrument panel.

P. Park
R. Reverse
N. Neutral
D. Drive (Automatic driving)
S. Sport programme
❄. **Snow** programme
1 to 4. Gear engaged during
1 to 6. manual operation
-. Invalid value during manual operation

Moving off

- Apply the parking brake.
- With your foot in the brake pedal, select position **P** or **N**.
- Start the engine.

If this procedure is not followed, there is an audible signal, accompanied by a message in the screen.

- With the engine running, **press the brake pedal**.
- Release the parking brake.
- Select position **R**, **D** or **M.**
- Gradually release the brake pedal.

The vehicle moves off immediately.

If position **N** is engaged inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle then engage position **D** to accelerate.

When the engine is running at idle, with the brakes released, if position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves even without the accelerator being pressed.

When the engine is running, never leave children in the vehicle without supervision.

When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

A message appears if you try to move the gear lever from position **P** to another position without pressing the brake pedal.

Automatic operation

- Select position **D** for **automatic** changing of the four or six gears.

The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any intervention on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the style of driving, the profile of the road and the load in the vehicle.

For maximum acceleration without touching the lever, press the accelerator pedal down fully (kick down). The gearbox changes down automatically or maintains the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.

On braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide efficient engine braking.

If you release the accelerator sharply, the gearbox will not change to a higher gear for safety reasons.

Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving.

Never select positions **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

Sport and snow programmes

These two special programmes supplement the automatic operation in very specific conditions of use.

"S" Sport programme

- Press button **"S"**, after starting the engine.

The gearbox automatically favours a dynamic style of driving.



S appears in the instrument panel.

Snow programme "❄"

- Press button "❄", after starting the engine.

The gearbox adapts to driving on slippery roads.

This programme improves starting and drive when grip is poor.



❄ appears in the instrument panel.

Return to standard automatic operation

☞ At any time, press the button selected again to quit the programme engaged and return to auto-adaptive mode.

Manual operation

☞ Select position **M** for **sequential** changing of the four or six gears.

☞ Push the lever towards the **+** sign to change up a gear.

☞ Pull the lever towards the **-** sign to change down a gear.

It is only possible to change from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed permit; otherwise, the gearbox will operate temporarily in automatic mode.



D disappears and the gears engaged appear in succession on the instrument panel.

If the engine speed is too low or too high, the gear selected flashes for a few seconds, then the actual gear engaged is displayed.

It is possible to change from position **D** (automatic) to position **M** (manual) at any time.

When the vehicle is stationary or moving very slowly, the gearbox selects gear **M1** automatically.

The sport and snow programmes do not operate in manual mode.

Invalid value during manual operation



This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (selector between two positions).

Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, you can engage position **P** or **N** to place the gearbox in neutral.

In both cases, apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.

If the lever is not in position **P**, when the driver's door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off, an audible signal is heard and a message appears in the screen.

☞ Return the lever to position **P**; the audible signal stops and the message disappears.

Operating fault



When the ignition is on, the lighting of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, indicates a gearbox fault.

In this case, the gearbox switches to emergency mode and is locked in 3rd gear. You may feel a substantial knock when changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R**. This will not cause any damage to the gearbox.

Do not exceed a speed of 60 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

This warning lamp may also come on if a door is opened.

There is a risk of damage to the gearbox:

- if you press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time,
- if you force the lever from position **P** to another position when the battery is flat.

To limit fuel consumption when stationary for long periods with the engine running (traffic jam...), place the gear lever in position **N** and apply the parking brake.

STOP & START

The Stop & Start system puts the engine temporarily on standby - STOP mode - during stops in the traffic (red lights, traffic jams, or other...). The engine restarts automatically - START mode - as soon as you want to move off. The restart takes place instantly, quickly and silently.

Perfect for urban use, the Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

Operation

Going into engine STOP mode

The **"ECO"** warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine goes into standby:

- **with a manual gearbox**, at speeds below 12 mph (20 km/h), when you put the gear lever into neutral and release the clutch pedal,

- **with the 6-speed electronic gear control gearbox**, at a speed below 5 mph (8 km/h), when you press the brake pedal or put the gear lever into position **N**.

If your vehicle is fitted with the system, a time counter calculates the sum of the periods in STOP mode during a journey. It rests itself to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the key.

With the automatic gearbox system, for your comfort during parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear.

STOP mode does not affect the functionality of the vehicle, such as braking, power steering, for example.

Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key.

Special cases: STOP mode unavailable

STOP mode is not invoked when:

- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start using the key,
- the engine is needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment,
- demisting is on,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature...) where the engine is needed to assure control of a system.

In this case, the **"ECO"** warning lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Going into engine START mode

The **"ECO"** warning lamp goes off and the engine starts:

- **with a manual gearbox**, when you fully depress the clutch pedal,
- **with the 6-speed electronic gear control gearbox**:
  - gear lever in position **A** or **M**, when you release the brake pedal,
  - or gear lever in position **N** and the brake pedal released, when you move the gear lever to position **A** or **M**,
  - or when you engage reverse gear.

With a manual gearbox in STOP mode, if a gear is engaged without fully depressing the clutch pedal, a warning lamp comes on or a message is displayed asking you to depress the clutch pedal to restart the engine.

Special cases: START invoked automatically

For your safety and comfort, START is invoked automatically when:

- you open the driver's door,
- you unfasten the driver's seat belt,
- the speed of the vehicle exceeds 15 mph (25 km/h) with a manual gearbox or 7 mph (11 km/h) with the 6-speed electronic gearbox system,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature...) where the engine is needed to assure control of a system.

In this case the **"ECO"** warning lamp flashes for few seconds, then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Deactivation



At any time, press the **"ECO OFF"** switch to deactivate the system.

This is confirmed by the switch warning lamp coming on accompanied by a message in the screen.

If the system has been deactivated in STOP mode, the engine restarts immediately.

Reactivation

Press the **"ECO OFF"** switch again.

The system is active again; this is confirmed by the switch warning lamp going off and a message in the instrument panel.

The system is reactivated automatically at every new start using the key.

Operating fault



In the event of a malfunction with the system, the **"ECO OFF"** switch warning lamp flashes, then comes on continuously.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

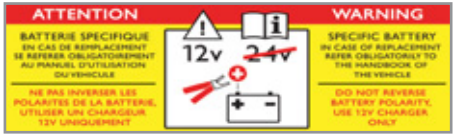
In the event of a fault in STOP mode, the vehicle may stall. All of the warning lamps in the instrument panel come on. It is then necessary to switch off the ignition and start the engine again using the key.

Maintenance

! Before working under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from automatic operation of START mode.

This system requires a specific battery with a special specification and technology (reference numbers available from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop).

Fitting a battery not listed by PEUGEOT introduces the risk of malfunction of the system.



! The Stop & Start system makes use of advanced technology. All work on this type of battery must be done only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

SPEED LIMITER

System which prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver.

When the programmed speed limit is reached, pressing the accelerator pedal no longer has any effect.

The speed limiter is **switched on** manually: it requires a programmed speed of at least 20 mph (30 km/h).

The speed limiter is **switched off** by manual operation of the control.

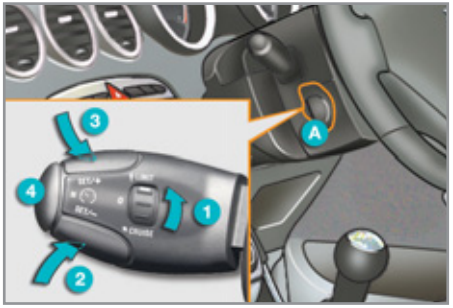
The programmed speed can be exceeded temporarily by pressing the accelerator firmly.

To return to the programmed speed, simply slow down to a speed below the programmed speed.

The programmed speed remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

i The speed limiter cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to respect speed limits, nor can it replace the need for vigilance and responsibility on the part of the driver.

Steering mounted controls



The controls of this system are grouped together on stalk **A**.

1. Speed limiter mode selection dial
2. Value decrease button
3. Value increase button
4. Speed limiter on / off button

Displays in the instrument panel



The programmed information is grouped together on the instrument panel screen.

5. Speed limiter on / off indication
6. Speed limiter mode selection indication
7. Programmed speed value



Programming

☞ Turn dial **1** to the **"LIMIT"** position: the speed limiter mode is selected but is not switched on (OFF).

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.



☞ Set the speed value by pressing button **2** or **3** (e.g.: 55 mph (90 km/h)).



You can then change the programmed speed using buttons **2** and **3**:

- by + or - 1 mph (km/h) = short press,
- by + or - 5 mph (km/h) = long press,
- in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h) = maintained press.

☞ Switch the speed limiter on by pressing button **4**.



☞ Switch the speed limiter off by pressing button **4**: the display confirms that it has been switched off (OFF).



☞ Switch the speed limiter back on by pressing button **4** again.

Exceeding the programmed speed

Pressing the accelerator pedal to exceed the programmed speed will not have any effect unless you press the pedal **firmly** past the **point of resistance**.

The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the programmed speed, which is still displayed, flashes.

Returning to the programmed speed, by means of intentional or unintentional deceleration of the vehicle, automatically cancels the flashing of the programmed speed.



Return to normal driving

☞ Turn dial **1** to the **"0"** position: the speed limiter mode is deselected. The display returns to the distance recorder.

Operating fault

In the event of a speed limiter malfunction, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



! On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- do not fit one mat on top of another.

CRUISE CONTROL

System which automatically maintains the speed of the vehicle at the value programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.

The cruise control is **switched on** manually: it requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h) and the engagement of:

- fourth gear on the manual gearbox,
- second gear in sequential mode on the electronic gear control gearbox or automatic gearbox,
- position **A** on the electronic gear control gearbox or **D** on the automatic gearbox.

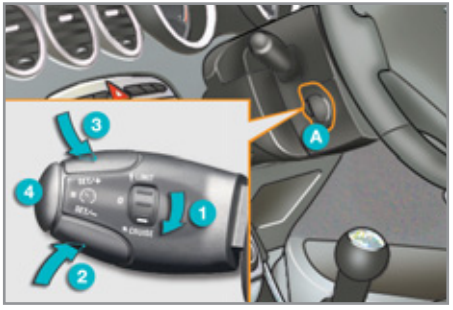
The cruise control is **switched off** manually or by pressing the brake or clutch pedal or on triggering of the ESP system for safety reasons.

It is possible to exceed the programmed speed temporarily by pressing the accelerator pedal.

To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal.

Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed value.

Steering mounted controls



The controls of this system are grouped together on stalk **A**.

1. Cruise control mode selection dial
2. Speed programming / programmed value decrease button
3. Speed programming / programmed value increase button
4. Cruise control off / resume button

i The cruise control cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits, nor can it replace the need for vigilance and responsibility on the part of the driver.

Displays in the instrument panel



The programmed information is grouped together in the instrument panel screen.

5. Cruise control off / resume indication
6. Cruise control mode selection indication
7. Programmed speed value



Programming

☞ Turn dial **1** to the **"CRUISE"** position: the cruise control mode is selected but is not switched on (OFF).



☞ Set the programmed speed by accelerating to the required speed, then press button **2** or **3** (e.g.: 70 mph (110 km/h)).



You can then change the programmed speed using buttons **2** and **3**:

- by + or - 1 mph (km/h) = short press,
- by + or - 5 mph (km/h) = long press,
- in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h) = maintained press.

☞ Switch off the cruise control by pressing button **4**: the display confirms that it has been switched off (OFF).



☞ Switch the cruise control back on by pressing button **4** again.



Exceeding the programmed speed

Intentional or unintentional exceeding of the programmed speed results in flashing of this speed in the screen.

Return to the programmed speed, by means of intentional or unintentional deceleration of the vehicle, automatically cancels the flashing of the speed.



Return to normal driving

☞ Turn dial **1** to the **"0"** position: the cruise control mode is deselected. The display returns to the distance recorder.

Operating fault

In the event of a cruise control malfunction, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



! When the cruise control is switched on, be careful if you maintain the pressure on one of the programmed speed changing buttons: this may result in a very rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

Do not use the cruise control on slippery roads or in heavy traffic.

On a steep descent, the cruise control will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

PARKING SENSORS

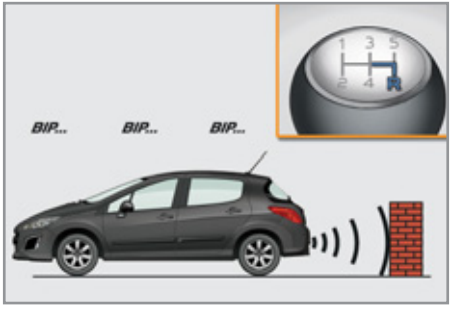
This system indicates the proximity of an obstacle (person, vehicle, tree, gate, etc.) which comes within the field of detection of sensors located in the bumper.

Certain types of obstacle (stake, road-works cone, etc.) detected initially will no longer be detected at the end of the manoeuvre due to the presence of blind spots.



! This function cannot, in any circumstances, take the place of the vigilance and responsibility of the driver.

Rear parking sensors



The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear. This is accompanied by an audible signal.

The system is switched off when you exit reverse gear.

Audible assistance

The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.

The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) indicates the side on which the obstacle is located.

When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than approximately thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.

Visual assistance





This supplements the audible signal by displaying bars in the multifunction screen which move progressively nearer to the vehicle. When the obstacle is near, the "Danger" symbol is also displayed in the screen.

Front parking sensors

In addition to the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is still below 6 mph (10 km/h).

The front parking sensors are interrupted if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if no further obstacles are detected or when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) indicates whether the obstacle is in front or behind.

Deactivation / Activation of the front and rear parking sensors



The function is deactivated by pressing this button. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

Pressing this button again reactivates the function. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Deactivation / Activation of the rear parking sensors



The function is deactivated or activated via the vehicle configuration menu.

The status of the function is stored when the ignition is switched off.

For more information on access to the parking sensors menu, refer to the section covering the configuration of vehicle systems.

The function will be deactivated automatically if a trailer is being towed or a bicycle carrier is fitted (vehicle fitted with a towbar or bicycle carrier recommended by PEUGEOT).

Operating fault

In the event of a malfunction of the system, when reverse gear is engaged this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel and/or a message appears in the screen, accompanied by an audible signal (short beep).

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

In bad weather or in winter, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.

When the vehicle is moving at a speed below 6 mph (10 km/h), certain sound sources (motorcycle, lorry, pneumatic drill, etc.) may trigger the audible signals of the parking sensor system.

PEUGEOT & TOTAL

Partners in performance and protection of the environment

Innovation at the service of performance

The TOTAL Research and Development teams develop lubricants for PEUGEOT which satisfy the requirements of the latest technical innovations incorporated in PEUGEOT vehicles.

This ensures that you obtain the best performance and the maximum engine life.

Reduced exhaust emissions

TOTAL lubricants are formulated to optimise the efficiency of engines and the protection of the emissions post-treatment systems. It is crucial to observe the servicing recommendations made by PEUGEOT to ensure correct operation.



PEUGEOT RECOMMENDS TOTAL

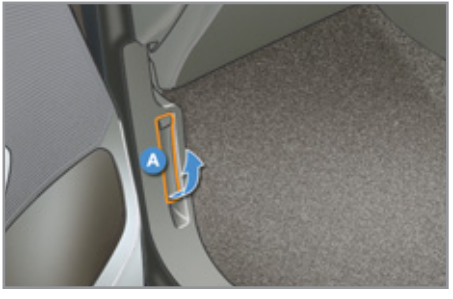
PEUGEOT TOTAL

OFFICIAL PARTNERS

BONNET

Opening

! Before doing anything under the bonnet, switch off the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from an automatic change to START mode.

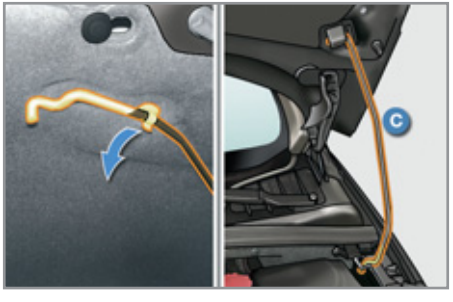


☞ Open the front left door.

☞ Pull the interior bonnet release lever **A**, located at the bottom of the door aperture.



☞ Push the exterior safety catch **B** to the left and raise the bonnet.



☞ Unclip the stay **C** from its housing.

☞ Fix the stay in the notch to hold the bonnet open.

i The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents opening of the bonnet while the front left door is closed.

! Do not open the bonnet in high winds.

When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the bonnet stay with care (risk of burns).

Closing

☞ Take the stay out of the support notch.

☞ Clip the stay in its housing.

☞ Lower the bonnet and release it at the end of its travel.

☞ Pull on the bonnet to check that it is secured correctly.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL (DIESEL)

On vehicle fitted with HDi engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel; refer to the engine compartment view on the "Diesel engine" page.

If the tank on your vehicle is fitted with a misfuel prevention device, refer to the section "Access - § Misfuel prevention (Diesel)".

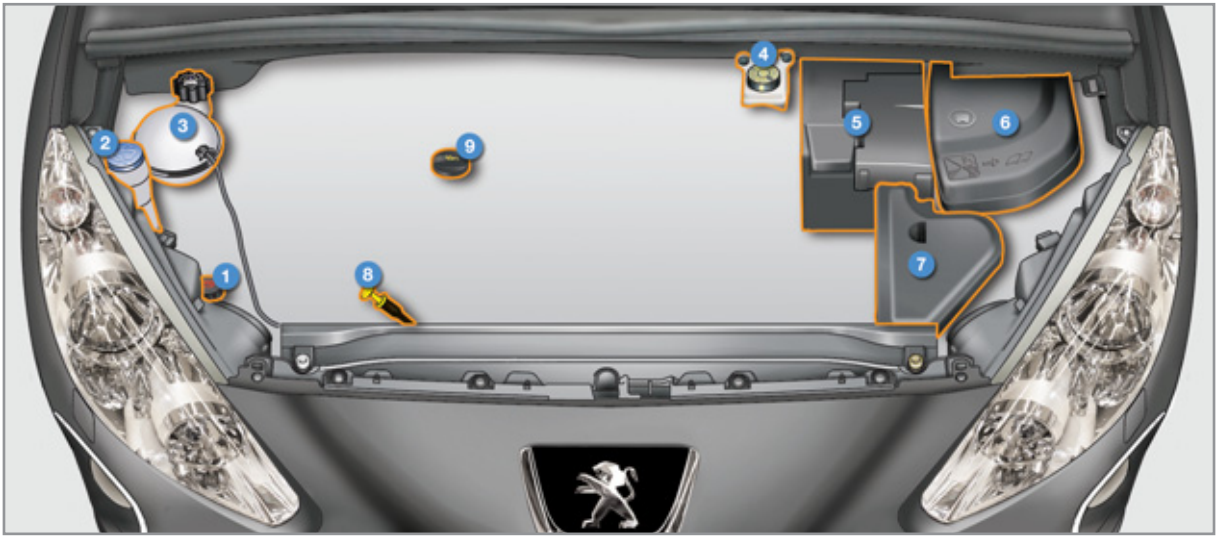
If the engine does not start first time, don't keep trying. Start the procedure again from the beginning.

1.6 litre HDi engine

- Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of diesel.
- Open the bonnet.
- If necessary, unclip the styling cover for access to the priming pump.
- Squeeze and release the priming pump repeatedly until resistance is felt (there may be resistance at the first press).
- Operate the starter until the engine starts (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again then start the engine.
- Clip the styling cover back in place.
- Close the bonnet.

2 litre HDi engine

- Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of Diesel.
- Open the bonnet.
- If necessary, unclip the style cover for access to the priming pump.
- Squeeze and release the priming pump repeatedly until fuel appears in the transparent pipe.
- Operate the starter until the engine starts (if the engine fails to start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- If the engine fails to start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again, then the starter.
- Put the style cover back in position and clip it in place, ensuring that it has clipped correctly.
- Close the bonnet.



PETROL ENGINES

The various caps and covers allow access for checking the levels of the various fluids and for replacing certain components.

1. Power steering reservoir.
2. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
3. Coolant reservoir.
4. Brake fluid reservoir.
5. Battery / Fuses.
6. Fusebox.
7. Air filter.
8. Engine oil dipstick.
9. Engine oil filler cap.



DIESEL ENGINES

The various caps and covers allow access for checking the levels of the various fluids, for replacing certain components and for priming the fuel system.

1. Power steering reservoir.
2. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
3. Coolant reservoir.
4. Brake fluid reservoir.
5. Battery / Fuses.
6. Fusebox.
7. Air filter.
8. Engine oil dipstick.
9. Engine oil filler cap.
10. Priming pump*.

* According to engine.

CHECKING LEVELS

Check all of these levels regularly and top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated.

If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! When working under the bonnet, take care, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns).

Oil level



The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator on the instrument panel, or using the dipstick.

This manual check will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

After topping up the oil, the check when switching on the ignition with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel will only be valid 30 minutes after topping up.

i It is normal to top up the oil level between services. PEUGEOT recommends that you check the oil level and top up if necessary every 3 000 miles (5 000 kilometres).

Engine oil change

Refer to the servicing booklet for details of the interval for this operation.

In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emission control system, the use of additives in the engine oil is prohibited.

Oil specification

The oil must be the correct grade for your engine and conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Brake fluid level



The brake fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

Changing the fluid

Refer to the servicing booklet for details of the interval for this operation.

Fluid specification

The brake fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations and meet the DOT4 standard.

Power steering fluid level



The power steering fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. Unscrew the cap, with the engine cold, to check the level.

Coolant level



The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it.

When the engine is warm, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan. This can operate with the ignition off.

On vehicles which are fitted with a particle emission filter, the fan may operate after the vehicle has been switched off, even if the engine is cold.

In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

To avoid any risk of scalding, unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop. When the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up the level.

Changing the coolant

The coolant does not have to be changed.

Fluid specification

The coolant must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Screenwash and headlamp wash fluid



In the case of vehicles fitted with headlamp washers, the low fluid level is indicated by an audible signal and a message in the instrument panel screen.

Top up the reservoir when you stop the vehicle.

Fluid specification

For optimum cleaning and to avoid freezing, this fluid must not be topped up with or replaced with plain water.

Additive level (Diesel with particle emissions filter)



The additive reservoir low level is indicated by fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message that the particle emissions filter additive level is too low.

Topping up

The reservoir must be topped up without delay by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Used products

Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.

Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.

Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.

Take used oil to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop (France) or to an authorised waste disposal site.

CHECKS

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the servicing booklet and according to your engine.

Otherwise, have them checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

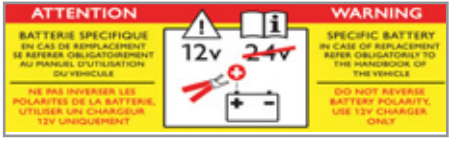
12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance.

However, check that the terminals are clean and correctly tightened, particularly in summer and winter.

When carrying out work on the battery, refer to the "Practical information" section for details of the precautions to be taken before disconnecting the battery and following its reconnection.



The presence of this label, in particular with the Stop & Start system, indicates the use of a specific 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specification. The involvement of a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop is essential when replacing or disconnecting the battery.

Air filter and passenger compartment filter



Refer to the servicing booklet for details of the replacement intervals for these components.

Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace them twice as often if necessary**.

A clogged passenger compartment filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

Oil filter



Replace the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Refer to the servicing booklet for details of the replacement interval for this component.

Particle emission filter (Diesel)



The start of saturation of the particle emissions filter is indicated by the temporary illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the risk of blockage of the particle emissions filter.

As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.

If the warning lamp stays on, refer to the "Additive level" section.

On a new vehicle, the first particle filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a "burning" smell, which is perfectly normal.

Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Refer to the servicing booklet for the details of the level checking interval for this component.

6-speed electronic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Refer to the servicing booklet for details of the checking interval for this component.

Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Refer to the servicing booklet for details of the level checking interval for this component.

Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

Brake disc wear



For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Parking brake



If excessive travel or a loss of effectiveness of this system is noticed, the parking brake must be checked, even between two services.

Checking this system must be done by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Only use products recommended by PEUGEOT or products of equivalent quality and specification.

In order to optimise the operation of units as important as the braking system, PEUGEOT selects and offers very specific products.

To avoid damaging the electrical units, the use of a high pressure washer in the engine compartment is strictly **prohibited**.



TEMPORARY PUNCTURE REPAIR KIT

Complete system consisting of a compressor and a sealant cartridge which permits **temporary repair** of a tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.

It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder.

Access to the kit



The kit is stowed in the boot under the floor. It is installed in the tool box, located under the storage box.

Access to the kit



The kit is stowed in a bag, located on the left-hand side of the boot.

Description of the kit





A. "Sealant" or "Air" position selector.
B. On **"I"** / off **"O"** switch.
C. Deflation button.
D. Pressure gauge (in bar or p.s.i.).
E. Compartment housing:
- a cable with adaptor for 12 V socket,
- various inflation adaptors for accessories, such as balls, bicycle tyres...

F. Sealant cartridge.
G. White pipe with cap for repair.
H. Black pipe for inflation.
I. Speed limit sticker.

The speed limit sticker **I** must be affixed to the vehicle's steering wheel to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.

Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

Repair procedure

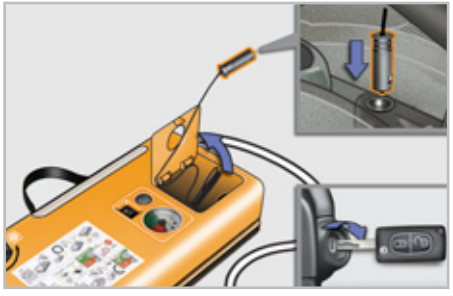
1. Sealing



- Switch off the ignition.
- Turn the selector **A** to the "sealant" position.
- Check that the switch **B** is in position **"O"**.



- Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.
- Unscrew the cap from the white pipe.
- Connect the white pipe to the valve of the tyre to be repaired.

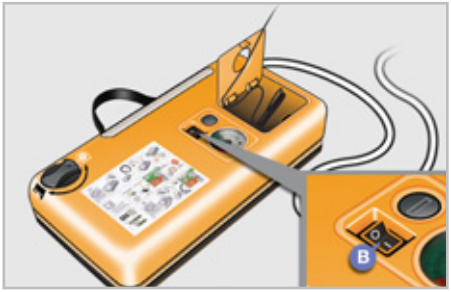


- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Start the vehicle and leave the engine running.

i Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre.

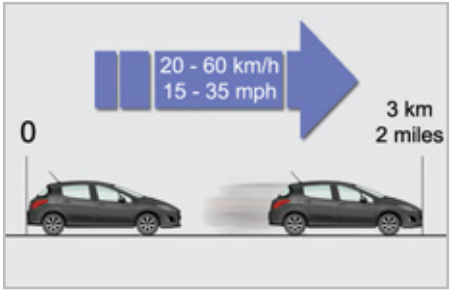
! Take care, this product is harmful (e.g. ethylene-glycol, colophony...) if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.

Keep it out of reach of children.



☞ Switch on the compressor by moving the switch **B** to position **"I"** until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bars.

The sealant is injected into the tyre under pressure; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of splashing).



☞ Remove the kit and screw the cap back on the white pipe.

Take care to avoid staining your vehicle with traces of fluid. Keep the kit to hand.

☞ Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 15 and 35 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.

☞ Stop to check the repair and the tyre pressure using the kit.

Do not start the compressor before connecting the white pipe to the tyre valve: the sealant product would be expelled through the pipe.

If after around 5 to 7 minutes the pressure is not attained, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

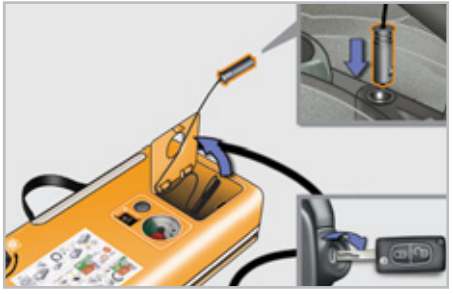
Tyre under-inflation detection

If the vehicle is fitted with tyre under-inflation detection, the under-inflation warning lamp will remain on after the wheel has been repaired until the system is reinitialised by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

2. Inflation



- Turn the selector **A** to the "air" position.
- Uncoil the black pipe **H** fully.
- Connect the black pipe to the valve of the wheel.



- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Start the vehicle again and leave the engine running.



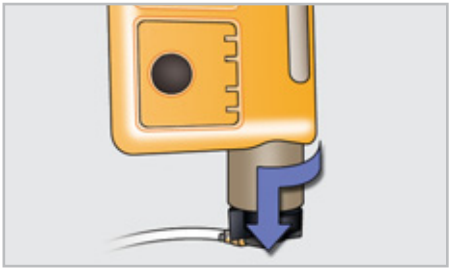
- Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position **"I"**; to deflate: switch **B** in position **"O"** and press button **C**), in accordance with the vehicle's tyre pressure label (located on the left hand door aperture).

  A loss of pressure indicates that the puncture has not been fully plugged; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or qualified workshop for assistance.
- Remove and stow the kit.
- Drive at reduced speed (50 mph [80 km/h] max) limiting the distance travelled to approximately 120 miles (200 km).

! - Visit a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

You must inform the technician that you have used this kit. After inspection, the technician will inform you whether the tyre can be repaired or must be replaced.

Removing the cartridge



- Stow the black pipe.
- Detach the angled base from the white pipe.
- Support the compressor vertically.
- Unscrew the cartridge from the bottom.

! Beware of discharges of fluid.

The expiry date of the fluid is indicated on the cartridge.

The sealant cartridge is designed for single use; even if only partly used, it must be replaced.

After use, do not discard the cartridge into the environment, take it to an authorised waste disposal site or a PEUGEOT dealer.

Do not forget to obtain a new sealant cartridge, available from PEUGEOT dealers or from a qualified workshop.

Checking tyre pressures / inflating accessories

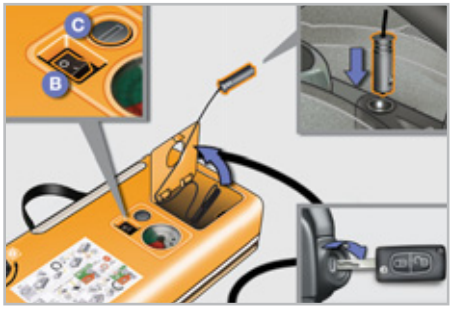
You can also use the compressor, without injecting any product, to:

- check or adjust the pressure of your tyres,
- inflate other accessories (balls, bicycle tyres...).



- Turn the selector **A** to the "Air" position.
- Uncoil the black pipe **H** fully.
- Connect the black pipe to the valve of the wheel or accessory.

If necessary, fit one of the adaptors supplied with the kit first.



- Connect the compressor's electrical connector to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Start the vehicle and let the engine run.
- Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position **"I"**; to deflate: switch **B** in position **"O"** and press button **C**), according to the vehicle's tyre pressure label or the accessory's pressure label.
- Remove the kit then stow it.

TEMPORARY PUNCTURE REPAIR KIT

Complete system consisting of a compressor and a bottle of sealant which permits **temporary repair** of the tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.



The kit is stowed in the boot storage tray.

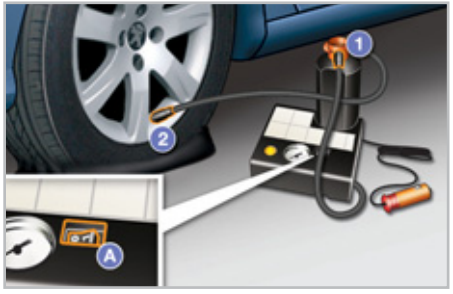
i It is designed to repair holes of a maximum diameter of 6 mm, only where located on the tyre tread or shoulder. Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated the tyre.

Using the kit

- Switch off the ignition.
- Tick the wheel to be repaired on the speed limitation sticker enclosed then affix the sticker to the vehicle's steering wheel to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.
- Clip the bottle **1** on the compressor **2**.



- Check that the switch **A** is tilted to position **"0"**.
- Connect the pipe of the bottle **1** to the valve of the tyre to be repaired.
- Unwind the pipe of the compressor **2** fully, then connect it to the bottle.



- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Start the vehicle and leave the engine running.



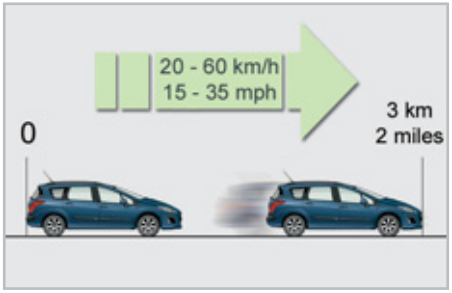
☞ Switch on the compressor by tilting the switch **A** to position **"1"** until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bars.



☞ Remove the compressor and store the bottle in the plastic bag, supplied in the kit, to avoid staining your vehicle with traces of fluid.

☞ Drive immediately for approximately two miles (three kilometres), at reduced speed (between 10 and 35 mph [20 and 60 km/h]), to plug the puncture.

☞ Stop to check the repair and the pressure.



☞ Connect the compressor pipe directly to the valve of the repaired wheel.



If this pressure has not been reached after approximately five to ten minutes, the tyre cannot be repaired; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have your vehicle repaired.

- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket again.
- Start the vehicle again and leave the engine running.



- Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **A** in position **"1"**; to deflate: switch **A** in position **"0"** and press button **B**), in accordance with the vehicle's tyre pressure label (located on the door aperture on the driver's side), then remember to check that the leak is plugged correctly (no further loss of pressure after several miles [kilometres]).
- Remove the compressor, then store the whole kit.



- Drive at reduced speed (50 mph [80 km/h] max) for no more than approximately 125 miles (200 km).

! - Visit a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to have the tyre repaired or replaced by a technician.

! Take care, the bottle of fluid contains ethylene-glycol. This product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes. Keep it out of reach of children.

The expiry date of the fluid is indicated on the base of the bottle.

The bottle is designed for a single use; even if only partly used, it must be replaced.

After use, do not discard the bottle into the environment, take it to a PEUGEOT dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.

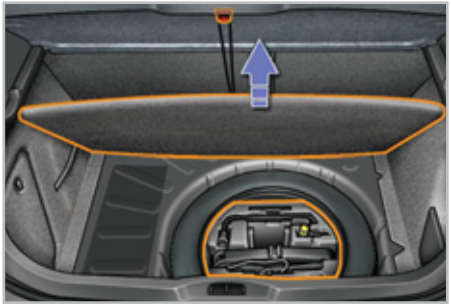
Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant product, available from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i If the vehicle is fitted with tyre underinflation detection, the tyre underinflation warning lamp will remain on after the wheel has been repaired until the system is reinitialised by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

CHANGING A WHEEL

Procedure for changing a faulty wheel for the spare wheel using the tools provided with the vehicle.

Access to the tools



The tools are installed in the boot under the floor.

To gain access to them:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ raise the floor,
- ☞ secure it by hooking its cord on the hook on the rear parcel shelf support,
- ☞ unclip and remove the box containing the tools.

List of tools



All of these tools are specific to your vehicle. Do not use them for other purposes.

1. Wheelbrace.
   For removing the wheel trim and the wheel fixing bolts.
2. Jack with integral handle.
   For raising the vehicle.
3. Wheel bolt finisher tool.
   Used for removing the wheel bolt finisher caps on alloy wheels.
4. Socket for the security bolts (located in the glove box).
   For adapting the wheelbrace to the special security bolts.

Wheel with trim

When removing the wheel, detach the trim first using the wheelbrace **1** pulling at the valve passage hole.

When refitting the wheel, refit the trim starting by placing its notch facing the valve and press around its edge with the palm of your hand.

Access to the spare wheel



The spare wheel is installed in the boot under the floor.

According to country, the spare wheel may be steel or alloy.

For access to it, refer to the paragraph "Access to the tools" on the previous page.

Fitting a steel spare wheel

If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, it is normal to notice, when tightening the bolts on fitting, that the washers do not come into contact with the steel spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.

Taking out the wheel

- ☞ Unscrew the yellow central bolt.
- ☞ Raise the spare wheel towards you from the rear.
- ☞ Take the wheel out of the boot.



Putting the wheel back in place

- ☞ Put the wheel back in its housing.
- ☞ Unscrew the yellow central bolt by a few turns then put it in place in the centre of the wheel.
- ☞ Tighten fully until the central bolt clicks to retain the wheel correctly.



- ☞ Put the box back in place in the centre of the wheel and clip it.



Tyre under-inflation detection

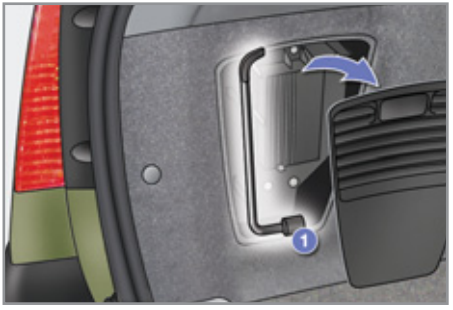
The spare wheel is not fitted with a sensor. The punctured wheel must be repaired by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



CHANGING A WHEEL

Procedure for changing a faulty wheel for the spare wheel using the tools provided with the vehicle.

Access to the tools



The wheelbrace **1** is stowed in the boot left-hand side trim; for access to it:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ open the access flap in the left-hand side trim,
- ☞ unclip the wheelbrace from its support,

The tools **2** and **3** are stowed in a box fitted under the spare wheel; the assembly is installed underneath the rear of the vehicle (refer to the section "Access to the spare wheel" on the following page for instructions on how to get them out).

List of tools



All of these tools are specific to your vehicle. Do not use them for other purposes.

1. Wheelbrace.
   For removing the wheel trim wheel fixing bolts.
2. Jack with integral handle.
   For raising the vehicle.
3. Wheel bolt finisher tool.
   Used for removing the wheel bolt finisher caps on alloy wheels.
4. Socket for the security bolts (located in the glove box or in the tool box under the spare wheel).
   For adapting the wheelbrace to the special security bolts.

Wheel with trim

When removing the wheel, detach the trim first using the wheelbrace **1** pulling at the valve passage hole.

When refitting the wheel, refit the trim starting by placing its notch facing the valve and press around its edge with the palm of your hand.

Access to the spare wheel

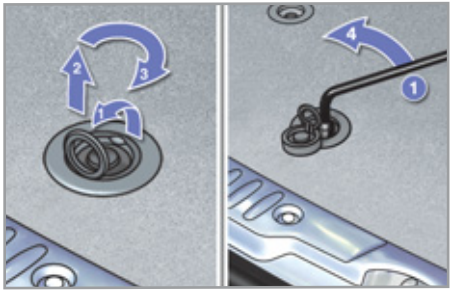


The spare wheel is supported by a winch system underneath the rear of the vehicle.

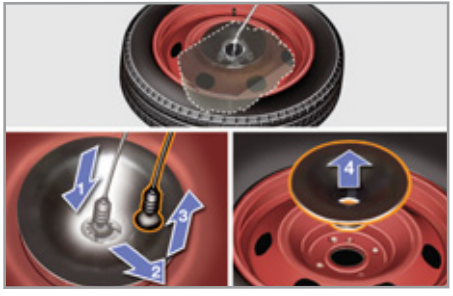
According to country, the spare wheel may be steel, alloy or of the "space-saver" type.

Taking out the wheel

- ☞ Lift up the cover eyelet, pull the cover upwards, then pivot it to open the flap; these actions release the winch and give access to its control nut.
- ☞ Unscrew this nut fully, using the wheelbrace **1**, to unwind the winch cable.

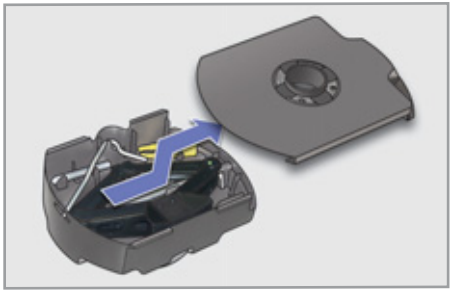


- ☞ Once the wheel/box is on the ground, disengage the assembly from the rear of the vehicle.
- ☞ Detach the hook mechanism to release the wheel/box assembly, as shown in the illustration.
- ☞ Take out the black plastic centring cone.



Access to the set of tools

- ☞ Lift up the wheel to release the set of tools.
- ☞ To open the storage box, slide the cover until half open, then pull it off.



Fitting a steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel

If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, it is normal to notice, when tightening the bolts on fitting, that the washers do not come into contact with the steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.



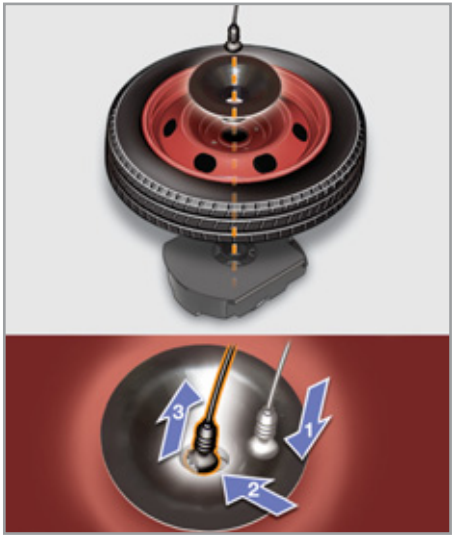
If you purchase a wheel of standard size to replace the "space-saver" type spare wheel, the spacer, located underneath the vehicle, must be removed. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Tyre under-inflation detection

The spare wheel is not fitted with a sensor. The punctured wheel must be repaired by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

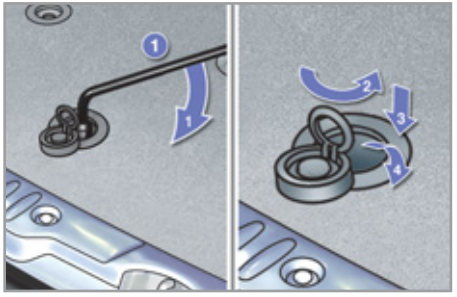
Putting the wheel back in place

- Store tools **2** and **3** in the box and close the cover.
- Position the box on the ground.
- Place the spare wheel on the box.
- Fit the black plastic centring cone in the centre of the wheel (on steel or "space-saver" type wheels only).
- Pass the hooking device through the cone and the wheel to secure it to the box cover.
- Raise the wheel/box assembly underneath the rear of the vehicle by tightening the winch control nut using the wheelbrace **1**.



- Fully tighten the nut.
- Close the flap with the eyelet and cover to secure the winch.
- Check that the wheel is located squarely against the floor.

  If not, repeat the operation.



Removing the wheel



Parking the vehicle

Immobilise the vehicle where it does not block traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery ground.

Apply the parking brake, switch off the ignition and engage first gear* to lock the wheels.

If necessary, place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.

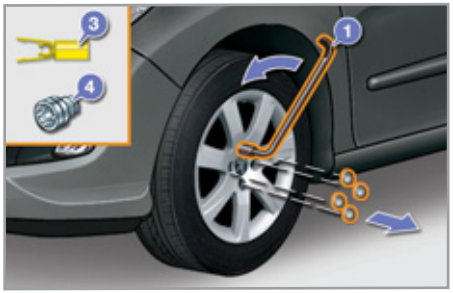
It is imperative that you ensure that the occupants get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.

Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

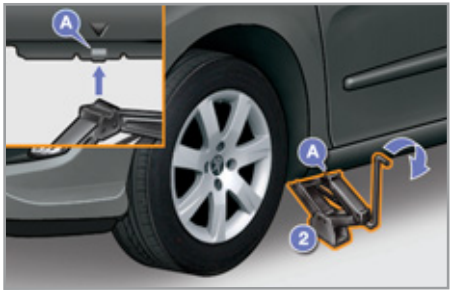
* position **R** for the electronic gear control gearbox; **P** for the automatic gearbox.

List of operations

- Remove the finisher cap from each wheel bolt using tool **3**.
- Fit the security socket **4** on the wheelbrace **1** to slacken the security bolt.
- Slacken the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.



- Place the jack **2** in contact with one of the two front **A** or rear **B** locations provided on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.
- Extend the jack **2** until its base plate is in contact with the ground. Ensure that the centreline of the jack base plate is directly below the location **A** or **B** used.



- Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.
- Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
- Remove the wheel.



Fitting the wheel



List of operations

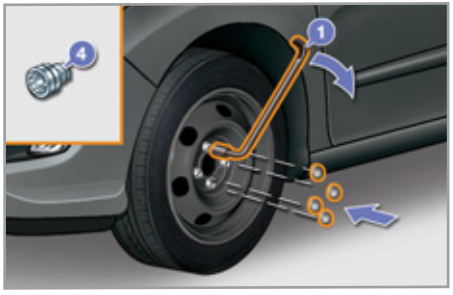
- Put the wheel in place on the hub.
- Screw in the bolts by hand to the stop.
- Pre-tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **1** fitted with the security socket **4**.
- Pre-tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.



- Lower the vehicle fully.
- Fold the jack **2** and detach it.



- Tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **1** fitted with the security socket **4**.
- Tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.
- Refit the finisher caps on each wheel bolt.
- Store the tools in the box.



After changing a wheel

To store the punctured wheel in the boot correctly, first remove the central cover.

When using the "space-saver" type spare wheel, do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).

Have the tightening of the bolts and the pressure of the spare wheel checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Have the punctured wheel repaired and replace it on the vehicle as soon as possible.

CHANGING A BULB

! The headlamps are fitted with polycarbonate glass with a protective coating:

- ☞ **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
- ☞ use a sponge and soapy water,
- ☞ when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals,
- ☞ do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use lint-free cloths.

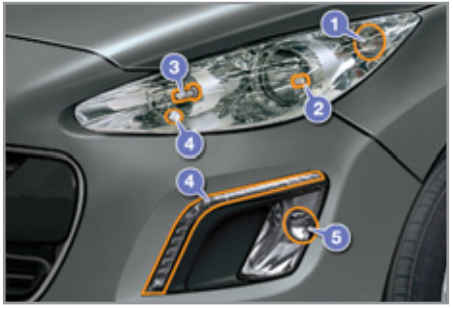
! Changing a bulb should only be done after the headlamp has been switched off for a few minutes (risk of serious burns).

It is imperative to use only anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs in order not to damage the headlamp.

Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb with the same type and specification.

Front lamps

Model with halogen headlamps



1. **Direction indicators (PY21W amber).**
2. **Dipped beam headlamps (H7 - 55W).**
3. **Main beam headlamps (H1 - 55W).**
4. **Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (P21/5W)**
   or
   Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (LEDs).
5. **Foglamps (H8 - 35W).**

Model with xenon and directional headlamps

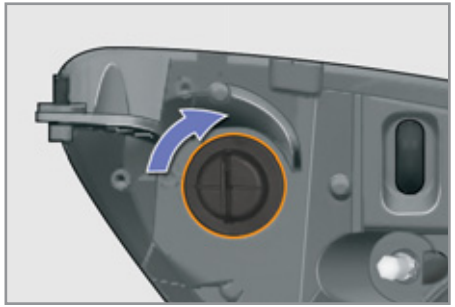


1. **Direction indicators (PY21W SV silver).**
2. **Directional dipped / main beam headlamps (D1S-35W).**
3. **Additional main beam headlamps (H1-55W).**
4. **Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (P21/5W)**
   or
   Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (LEDs).
5. **Foglamps (H8-35W).**

! **Risk of electrocution**

Xenon bulbs (D1S-35W) must be replaced by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Changing direction indicator bulbs



- Turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn and extract it.
- Pull the bulb out and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Amber or silver coloured bulbs, such as the direction indicators, must be replaced with bulbs of identical specifications and colour.

When refitting, close the protective cover carefully to assure the sealing of the headlamp.

Changing dipped beam headlamp bulbs

- Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.
- Disconnect the bulb connector.
- Spread the springs to release the bulb.
- Pull the bulb out and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Changing main beam headlamp bulbs

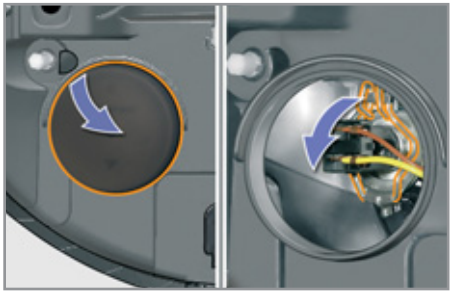
- Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.
- Disconnect the bulb connector.
- Compress the springs to release the bulb.
- Extract the bulb and change it

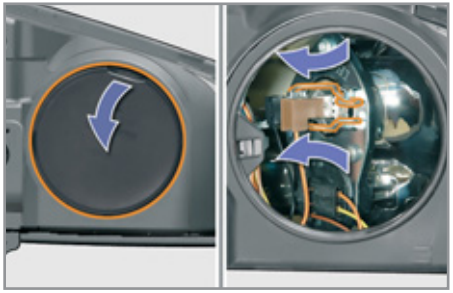
To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

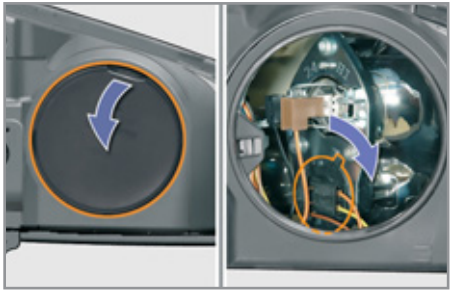
Changing daytime running lamp / sidelamp bulbs

- Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.
- Disconnect the bulb connector.
- Turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn and extract it.
- Pull the bulb out and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.







Changing integrated direction indicator side repeaters



- ☞ Insert a screwdriver at the middle of the repeater between the repeater and the base of the mirror.
- ☞ Tilt the screwdriver to extract the repeater and remove it.
- ☞ Disconnect the repeater connector.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain replacement repeaters.

Changing the daytime running lamps / sidelamps



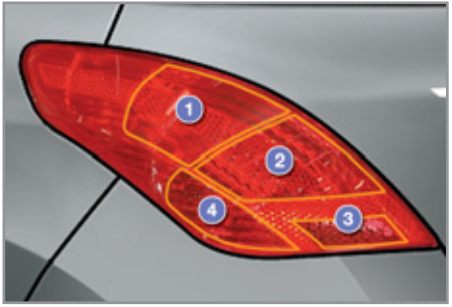
For the replacement of this type of LED lamp, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Changing front foglamp bulbs



To replace these bulbs contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Rear lamps



1. **Brake lamps / sidelamps (P21/5W).**
2. **Sidelamps (P21/5W).**
3. **Foglamp, offside (P21W).**
   Reversing lamp, nearside (P21W).
4. **Direction indicators (P21W).**

If the vehicle is fitted with the JBL audio system, on the right-hand side, first remove the three fixing bolts, then move the box.

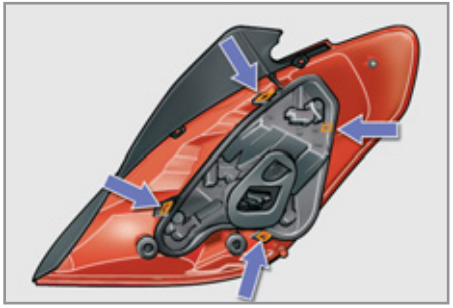
Changing bulbs

These five bulbs are changed from outside the boot:

- on the right-hand side; remove the access flap,
- on the left-hand side; turn the fixing bolt a quarter of a turn and remove the storage box cover,
- unclip the storage box,



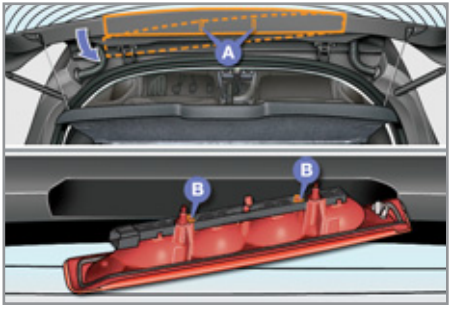
- remove the two lamp fixing nuts,
- extract the lamp carefully from the outside,
- disconnect the lamp connector,



- press the four tabs and remove the bulb holder,
- turn the bulb a quarter of a turn and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Changing third brake lamp bulbs (4 bulbs W5W)

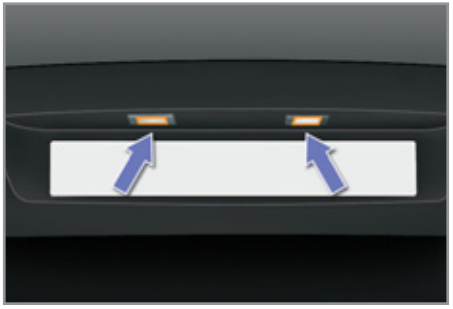


- Unclip the tailgate upper trim from left to right.
- Unscrew the two lamp fixing nuts **A**.
- Unclip the lamp's central pin.
- Extract the lamp from the outside.
- Disconnect the bulb holder connector and the wash-wipe pipe.
- Unclip the bulb holder from the lamp by pressing on the two tabs **B**.
- Pull the bulb and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Do not apply force to the lamp when tightening the nuts.

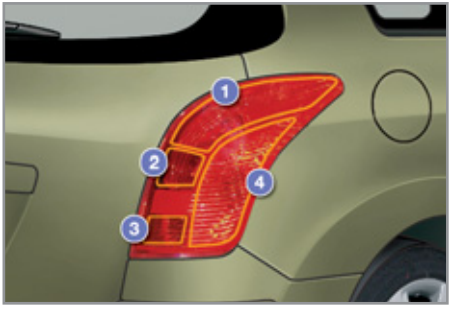
Changing the number plate lamp bulbs (W5W)



- Insert a thin screwdriver into one of the outer holes of the lens.
- Push it outwards to unclip.
- Remove the lens.
- Pull the bulb and change it.



Rear lamps

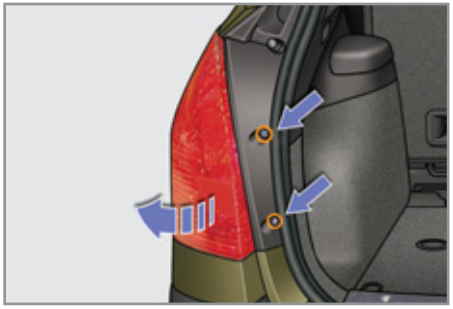


1. **Brake lamps / sidelamps (P21/5W).**
2. **Sidelamps (P21/5W).**
3. **Foglamp, offside (P21W)**
   Reversing lamp, nearside (P21W).
4. **Direction indicators (P21W)**

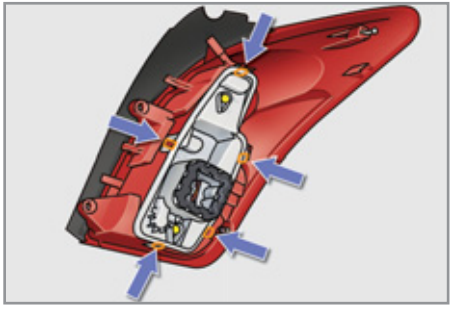
Changing bulbs

These five bulbs are changed from outside the boot:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ unscrew the two lamp fixing bolts,
- ☞ extract the lamp carefully pulling it from the bottom and pivoting it towards the outside,



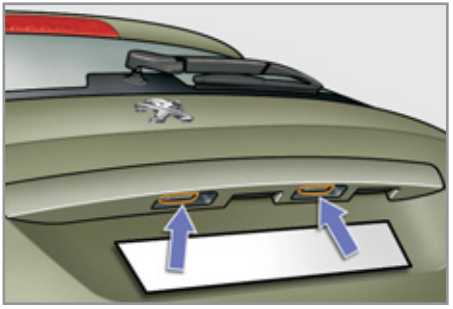
- ☞ unclip the lamp connector,
- ☞ separate the five tabs and remove the bulb holder,
- ☞ turn the bulb a quarter of a turn and change it.



To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

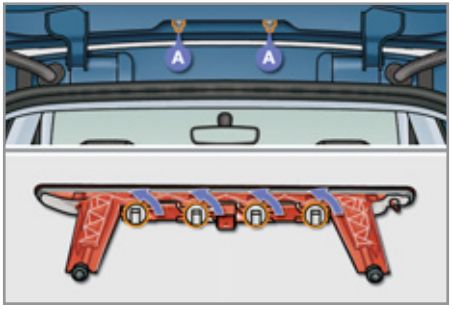
Take care to engage the lamp in its guides keeping it in line with the vehicle.

Changing the number plate lamp bulbs (W5W)



- Insert a thin screwdriver into one of the outer holes of the lens.
- Push it outwards to unclip.
- Remove the lens.
- Pull the bulb and change it.

Changing the third brake lamp (SW - 4 bulbs W5W)

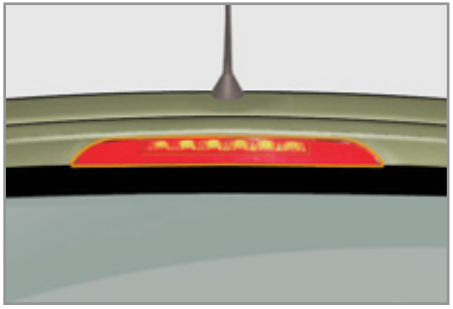


- Remove the two lamp fixing nuts **A**.
- Take out the lamp from the outside.
- Disconnect the connector and the screenwash pipe from the lamp.
- Turn the bulb holder corresponding to the faulty bulb a quarter of a turn.
- Pull the bulb and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

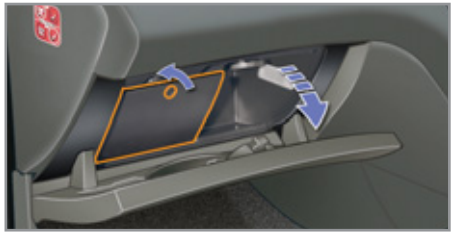
Do not force the lamp when tightening the nuts.

Changing the third brake lamp (SW - LEDs)



For the replacement of this type of LED lamp, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

CHANGING A FUSE



Access to the tools

The extraction tweezer is fitted to the back of the dashboard fusebox cover.

For access to it:

- ☞ open the glove box lid,
- ☞ push the opening guide to the left to open to beyond the first notch,
- ☞ open the glove box lid fully,
- ☞ turn the screw a quarter of a turn to the left,
- ☞ unclip the fusebox cover by pulling at the top right,
- ☞ remove the cover completely and turn it over,
- ☞ remove the carrier in which is fitted the tweezer.



Changing a fuse

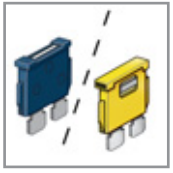
Before changing a fuse, it is necessary to

- ☞ identify and rectify the cause of the failure,
- ☞ switch off all electrical consumers,
- ☞ immobilise the vehicle and switch off the ignition,
- ☞ identify the failed fuse using the tables and diagrams on the following pages.

To replace a fuse, it is essential to:

- ☞ use the special tweezer to extract the fuse from its housing and check its filament.
- ☞ always replace the failed fuse with a fuse of the same rating (same colour); the use of a different rating may cause malfunctions (risk of fire).

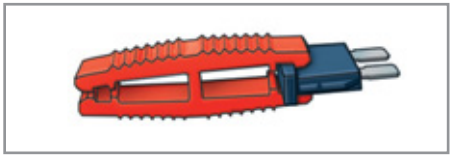
If the fault recurs soon after changing the fuse, have the electrical system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



Good



Failed



Tweezer

Installing electrical accessories

Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.

Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

PEUGEOT will not accept responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by PEUGEOT and not installed in accordance with its instructions, in particular when the combined consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

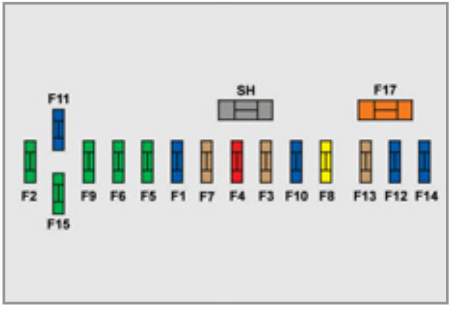
Dashboard fuses

The fusebox is placed in the lower dashboard, left-hand side, inside the glove box.



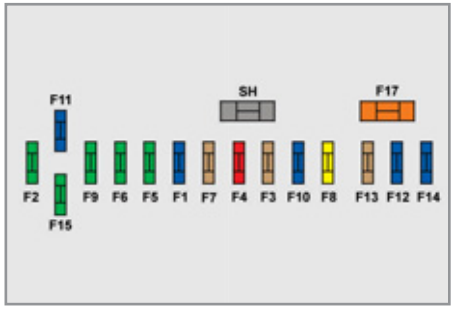
Access to the fuses

☞ refer to the paragraph "Access to the tools".

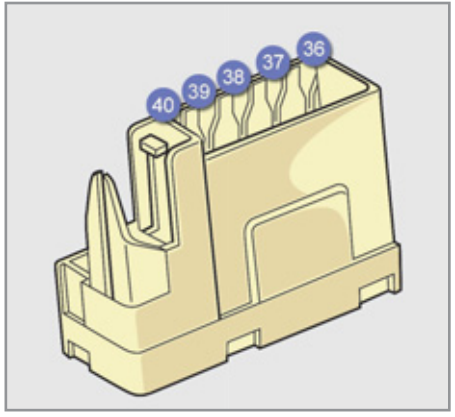


Fuse tables

Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F1	15 A	Rear wiper.
F2	30 A	Locking and deadlocking earth.
F3	5 A	Airbags and pretensioners control unit.
F4	10 A	Clutch pedal and dual-function brake switches, electrochromatic rear view mirror, air conditioning, steering wheel angle sensor, automatic gearbox, switching and protection unit.
F5	30 A	Front one-touch electric windows, folding mirrors supply, panoramic sunroof blind.
F6	30 A	Rear one-touch electric windows, trailer fusebox.
F7	5 A	Front and rear courtesy lamps, map reading lamps, rear reading lampd, sun visor illumination, glove box illumination, torch.
F8	20 A	Audio equipment, audio/telephone, multifunction screen, tyre under-inflation detection.
F9	30 A	Front 12 V socket.
F10	15 A	Steering mounted controls, alarm siren, alarm control unit.
F11	15 A	Low current ignition switch.



Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F12	15 A	Instrument panel, seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display, air conditioning, driver's seat memory unit, 2nd row rear seat switches, driving school module.
F13	5 A	Engine fusebox, airbags, electronic gear control gearbox gear lever, trailer fusebox.
F14	15 A	Multifunction screen, amplifier, Bluetooth system, rain / sunshine sensor, parking sensors control unit.
F15	30 A	Locking and deadlocking.
F17	40 A	Rear screen and door mirrors defrosting.
SH	-	PARC shunt.



Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
G36	30 A	Driver and passenger heated seats.
G37	5 A	Driving position memory unit, lighting dimmer.
G38	30 A	Driver's seat memory unit.
G39	30 A	Trailer fusebox supply.
G40	-	Not used.

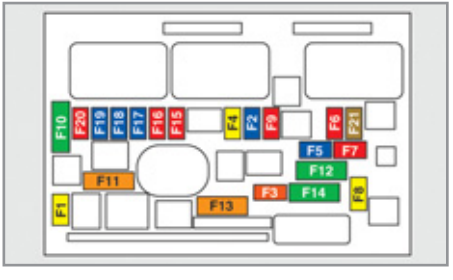
Engine compartment fuses

The fusebox is placed in the engine compartment near the battery (left-hand side).



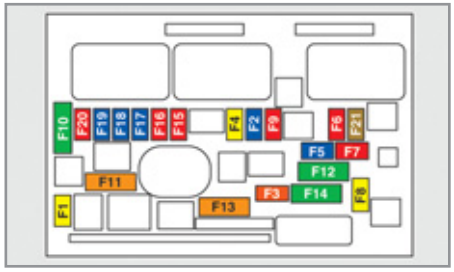
Access to the fuses

- ☞ Unclip the cover.
- ☞ Change the fuse (see corresponding paragraph).
- ☞ When you have finished, close the cover carefully to ensure the sealing of the fusebox.

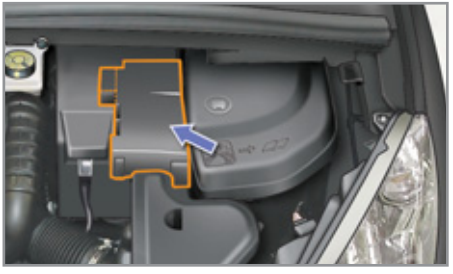


Fuse table

Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F1	20 A	Engine control unit supply, injection pump and EGR electrovalves (2 litre HDI), injectors (2 litre HDI).
F2	15 A	Horn.
F3	10 A	Front / rear wash-wipe.
F4	20 A	Headlamp wash.
F5	15 A	Canister purge, turbine discharge and turbo pressure regulation electrovalves (1.6 litre THP), oil vapour heater (1.6 litre THP, diesel heater (1.6 litre HDI).
F6	10 A	Vehicle speed sensor, ABS/ESP control unit.
F7	10 A	Power steering control unit, automatic gearbox, engine coolant level detector.
F8	25 A	Starter motor control.
F9	10 A	Diagnostic socket, directional headlamps, air flow sensor (Diesel), particle emission filter pump (Diesel).
F10	30 A	Engine control unit actuators (petrol: ignition coils, electrovalves, oxygen sensors, injectors, heaters, fuel pump, electronic thermostat) (Diesel: electrovalves, heaters).
F11	40 A	Air conditioning blower.



Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F12	30 A	Windscreen wipers slow / fast speed.
F13	40 A	Built-in systems interface supply (ignition positive).
F14	30 A	Air pump.
F15	10 A	Right-hand main beam headlamp.
F16	10 A	Left-hand main beam headlamp.
F17	15 A	Left-hand dipped headlamp.
F18	15 A	Right-hand dipped headlamp.
F19	15 A	Oil vapour heater (1.4 litre and 1.6 litre VTi), purge canister electrovalve (1.4 litre and 1.6 litre VTi), oxygen sensors (petrol), air cooling electrovalves (Diesel).
F20	10 A	Electronic thermostat, variable timing electrovalves, air flow sensor (1.6 litre THP 200, turbo pressure regulation electrovalve (Diesel), engine coolant level detector (Diesel).
F21	5 A	Cooling fan relay supply, Valvetronic relay control (1.4 litre 16V and 1.6 litre VTi), Turbo cooling (1.6 litre THP), Valvetronic engine (1.6 litre THP 200), air flow sensor (1.6 litre HDI).



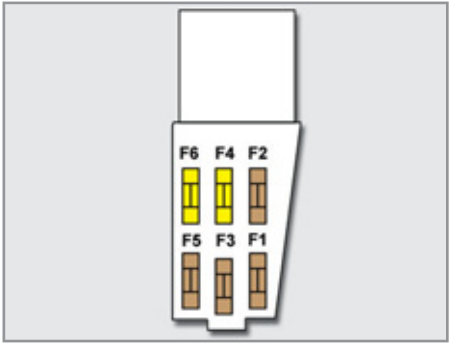


Table of fuses above the battery

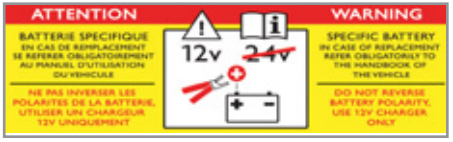
Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F1	-	Not used.
F2	5 A	Dual function brake switch.
F3	5 A	Battery charge unit.
F4	25 A	ABS/ESP electrovalves.
F5	-	Not used.
F6	15 A	Gearbox (electronic gear control or automatic).

! All work on the other types of fuses (midi-fuses and maxi-fuses) must only be done by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

12 V BATTERY

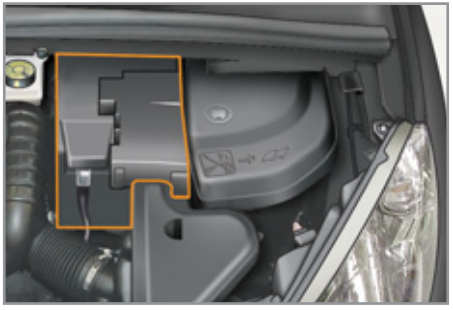
Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or charging a discharged battery.

! The presence of this label, in particular with the Stop & Start system, indicates the use of a 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specification; the involvement of a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop is essential when replacing or disconnecting the battery.



i After refitting the battery, the Stop & Start system will only be active after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the climatic conditions and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

Access to the battery



The battery is located under the bonnet.

To gain access to it:

- ☞ open the bonnet using the interior release lever, then the exterior safety catch,
- ☞ secure the bonnet stay,
- ☞ remove the plastic cover on the (+) terminal.

! **Before doing any work**

Immobilise the vehicle: apply the parking brake, put the gearbox into neutral (or position **P** if your vehicle has an automatic gearbox), then switch of the ignition.

Check that all electrical systems are off.

Do not reverse the polarity and use only a 12 V charger.

Do not disconnect the terminals while the engine is running.

Do not charge the batteries without disconnecting the terminals first.

i Ensure that the battery posts and terminals are clean. If covered in sulphate (white or green deposits), remove and clean them.

The batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste.

Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.

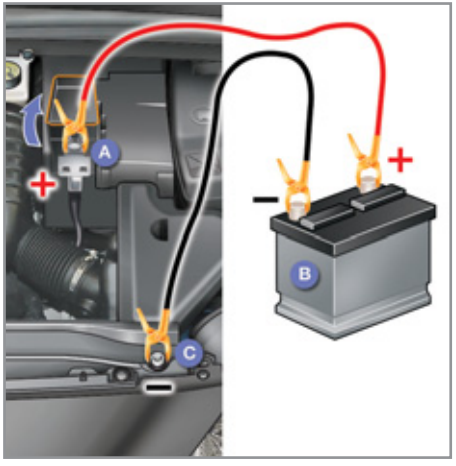
Starting using another battery

When your vehicle's battery is discharged, the engine can be started using a slave battery (external or on another vehicle) and jump leads.

! First check that the slave battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.

Do not try to start the engine by connecting a battery charger.

Do not disconnect the (+) terminal when the engine is running.

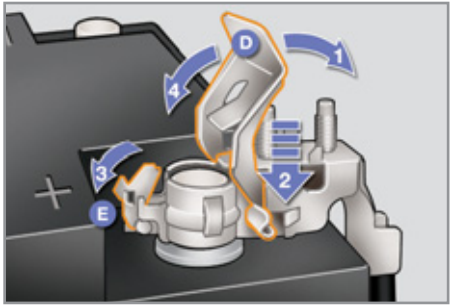


- Connect the red cable to the positive terminal (+) of the flat battery **A**, then to the positive terminal (+) of the slave battery **B**.
- Connect one end of the green or black cable to the negative terminal (-) of the slave battery **B** (or earth point on the other vehicle).
- Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle (or on the engine mounting).
- Start the vehicle with the good battery and leave it running for a few minutes.
- Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run

  If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.
- Wait until the engine returns to idle then disconnect the cables in the reverse order.

Disconnecting the (+) cable

- Raise the locking tab **D** fully to release the cable terminal **E**.



Reconnecting the (+) cable

- Position the open clip **E** of the cable on the positive post (+) of the battery.
- Press vertically on the clip **E** to position it correctly on the battery.
- Lock the clip by spreading the positioning lug and then lowering the tab **D**.

i Do not apply excessive force on the tab as locking will not be possible if the clip is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

The Stop & Start battery does not have to be disconnected for charging.

When your vehicle's battery is discharged or when the vehicle is to be out of use for a prolonged period, you can charge the battery using a battery charger.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for the specification of chargers compatible with your battery.

Before disconnecting

- Go to the battery.
- Check that the doors and boot are closed but not locked.
- Switch off the ignition and wait for at least four minutes.

If the vehicle is to not going to be used for more than a month, it is recommended that the battery be disconnected.

Charging

- Disconnect the (+) terminal.
- Follow the instructions for use provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
- Connect the charger's red cable to the (+) terminal of the battery, then the black cable to the (-) terminal.
- Once the battery is fully charged, disconnect the charger cables in reverse order.

Charging should be carried out in a well-ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid any risk of explosion and fire.

Do not try to charge a frozen battery; first thaw it out so as to avoid the risk of explosion.

If the battery had frozen, before charging, have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or qualified workshop who will ensure that the internal components have not been damaged and that the casing is not cracked, which would cause a leak of toxic and corrosive acid.

Reinitialisation after reconnection

After any reconnection of the battery, switch on the ignition and wait at least one minute before starting, to allow time for the initialisation of the electronic systems.

By referring to the corresponding sections, you should set or initialise the following systems yourself:

- remote control,
- one-touch electric windows,
- panoramic sunroof blind,
- time and date,
- audio and navigation system settings.

Check that no alert message or warning lamp comes on after switching on the ignition.

However, if minor problems persist after carrying out these operations, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

LOAD REDUCTION MODE

System which manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.

When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning, the heated rear screen...

The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

ENERGY ECONOMY MODE

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.

After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, windscreen wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc. for a maximum combined duration of thirty minutes.

This period may be greatly reduced if the battery is not fully charged.

Switching to economy mode

Once this time has elapsed, a message appears in the screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

If the telephone is being used at this time:

- it will be maintained for ten minutes with the hands-free kit of your Peugeot Connect Sound (RD5),
- it will be maintained for ten minutes with the Peugeot Connect Navigation (RT6) or the Peugeot Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D), then it will transfer to your telephone depending on the telephone model.

Exiting economy mode

These functions are reactivated automatically next time the vehicle is driven.

To restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run for at least five minutes.

A flat battery prevents the engine from starting (refer to the corresponding section).

CHANGING A WIPER BLADE

Before removing a front wiper blade

☞ Within one minute after switching off the ignition, operate the wiper stalk to position the wiper blades vertically on the windscreen.

Removing

☞ Raise the corresponding wiper arm.
☞ Unclip the wiper blade and remove it.

Fitting

☞ Put the corresponding new wiper blade in place and clip it.
☞ Fold down the wiper arm carefully.

After fitting a front wiper blade

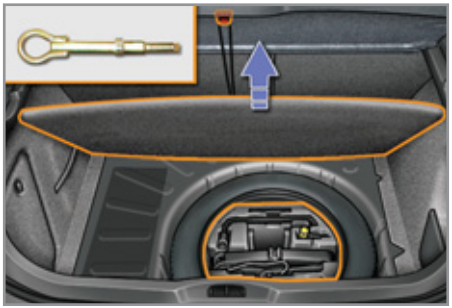
☞ Switch on the ignition.
☞ Operate the wiper stalk again to park the wiper blades.



TOWING THE VEHICLE

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable towing eye.

Access to the tools



The towing eye is installed in the boot under the floor.

To gain access to it:

☞ open the boot,
☞ raise the floor,
☞ secure it by hooking its cord on the hook on the rear parcel shelf support,
☞ remove the polystyrene storage box,
☞ remove the towing eye from the holder.

General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in your country.

Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.

The driver must stay at the wheel of the towed vehicle.

Driving on motorways and fast roads is prohibited when towing.

When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towing bar; rope and straps are prohibited.

When towing a vehicle with the engine off, there is no longer any power assistance for braking or steering.

In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:

- vehicle broken down on a motorway or fast road,
- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,
- towing with only two wheels on the ground,
- where there is no approved towing bar available...

Towing your vehicle



- On the front bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towing bar.
- Place the gear lever in neutral (position **N** on the electronic gearbox system or automatic gearbox).

Failure to observe this instruction could result in damage to certain components (braking, transmission...) and the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

- Unlock the steering by turning the ignition key one notch and release the parking brake.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- Move off gently and drive slowly for a short distance only.

Towing another vehicle



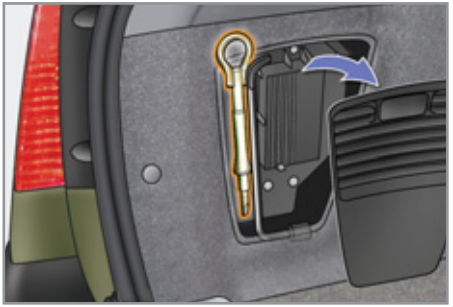
- On the rear bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towing bar.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- Move off gently and drive slowly for a short distance only.



TOWING THE VEHICLE

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable towing eye.

Access to the tools



The towing eye is installed in the left-hand side trim of the boot.

To gain access to it:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ open the access flap in the left-hand side trim,
- ☞ unclip the wheelbrace from its support,
- ☞ remove the towing eye from the same support.

General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in your country.

Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.

The driver must stay at the wheel of the towed vehicle.

Driving on motorways and fast roads is prohibited when towing.

When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towing bar; rope and straps are prohibited.

When towing a vehicle with the engine off, there is no longer any power assistance for braking or steering.

In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:

- vehicle broken down on a motorway or fast road,
- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,
- towing with only two wheels on the ground,
- where there is no approved towing bar available...

Towing your vehicle

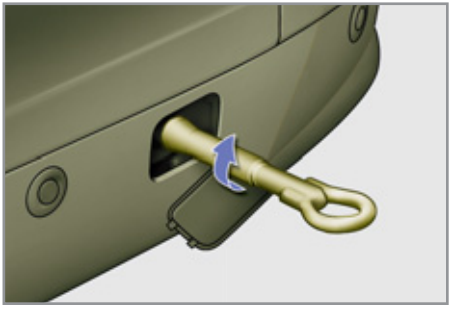


- ☞ On the front bumper, unclip the cover by pressing it on the left.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towing bar.
- ☞ Place the gear lever in neutral (position **N** on the automatic gearbox).

Failure to observe this instruction could result in damage to certain components (braking, transmission..) and the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

- ☞ Unlock the steering by turning the ignition key one notch and release the parking brake.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- ☞ Move off gently and drive slowly for a short distance only.

Towing another vehicle



- On the rear bumper, unclip the cover by pressing it on the left.
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towing bar.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- Move off gently and drive slowly for a short distance only.

TOWING A TRAILER

Towbar suitable for the attachment of a trailer with additional lighting and signalling.



Your vehicle is primarily designed for transporting people and luggage, but it may also be used for towing a trailer.

i We recommend the use of genuine PEUGEOT towbars and their harnesses that have been tested and approved from the design stage of your vehicle, and that the fitting of the towbar is entrusted to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

If the towbar is not fitted by a PEUGEOT dealer, it is imperative that it is fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.

Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and the driver must take particular care.

! If your vehicle is fitted with the 1.6 litre THP 200 hp engine, you cannot fit a towbar. The space occupied by the sport exhaust system prevents this.

Driving advice

Distribution of loads

- Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. Above 1 000 metres, the maximum towed load must be reduced by 10 % for every 1 000 metres of altitude.

Refer to the "Technical Data" section for details of the weights and towed loads which apply to your vehicle.

Side wind

- Take into account the increased sensitivity to side wind.

Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.

As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towed load on a long incline depends on the gradient and the ambient temperature.

In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.



☞ If the warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance.

To avoid overheating of the brakes on a long mountain type of descent, the use of engine braking is recommended.

Tyres

☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer.

i The rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically if a genuine PEUGEOT towbar is used.

VERY COLD CLIMATE SCREEN*

Removable protective screen which prevents the accumulation of snow at the radiator cooling fan.

Fitting

☞ Offer up the very cold climate screen to the front of the lower section of the front bumper.

☞ Press around its edge to engage its fixing clips one by one.

Removal

☞ Use a screwdriver as a lever to release each fixing clip in turn.

i Do not forget to remove the very cold climate screen:

- when the ambient temperature exceeds 10 °C,
- when towing,
- at speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).

* According to country.



FITTING ROOF BARS

When fitting transverse roof bars, use the four quick-fit fixings provided for this purpose:

- ☞ lift the concealing flaps,
- ☞ open the fixing covers on each bar using the spanner,
- ☞ put each fixing in place and lock them on the roof one by one,
- ☞ close the fixing covers on each bar using the spanner.





FITTING ROOF BARS

When fitting transverse roof bars, ensure that they are positioned correctly as shown by marks under the longitudinal roof bars.

Use accessories recommended by PEUGEOT and follow the accessory manufacturer's fitting instructions.

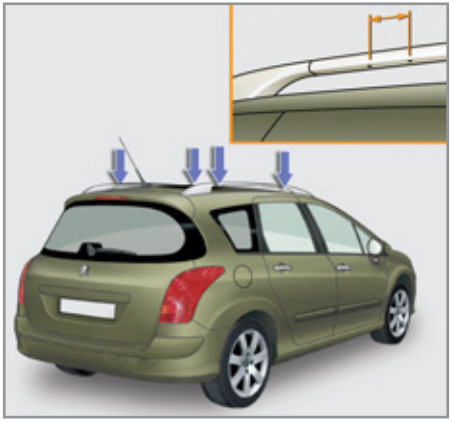
In order to place a load on the roof, transverse roof bars must be fitted on the longitudinal roof bars.

After putting the load in place and securing it, retighten the transverse roof bars.

i Maximum authorised weight on the roof rack, for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm (with the exception of bicycle carriers): 80 kg.

If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the roof.

Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects which are longer than the vehicle.



i The longitudinal roof bars cannot be removed.

Maximum authorised weight on the roof bars, for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm (except bicycle carriers): 75 kg.

If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the condition of the road, to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the roof.

Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects which are longer than the vehicle.

ACCESSORIES

A wide range of accessories and genuine parts is available from the PEUGEOT dealer network.

These accessories and parts have been tested and approved for reliability and safety.

They are all adapted to your vehicle and benefit from PEUGEOT's recommendation and warranty.

Conversion kits

You can obtain an "Enterprise" kit to convert a trade vehicle to a private car and vice-versa.

"Comfort":

parking sensors, side and rear blinds, door deflectors, isotherm module, head restraint-mounted coat hanger, front centre armrest, reading lamp, scented air freshener...

"Transport solutions":

boot liner, boot mat, boot spacers, storage under parcel shelf, transverse roof bars, bicycle carrier, ski carrier, roof box, towbars, wiring harnesses...

! Where the towbar and its wiring harness are not fitted by a PEUGEOT dealer, they must be fitted in line with the vehicle manufacturer's recommendations.

"Style":

leather steering wheel, aluminium gear lever knob, alloy wheels, wheel trims, body styling kit...

"Security and safety":

anti-theft alarm, wheel security locks, vehicle tracking system, child seats and booster cushions, breathalyser, first aid kit, warning triangle, high visibility vest, dog guard, front foglamp kit, temporary puncture repair kit, snow chains, anti-skid covers.

"Protection":

mats*, mud flaps, seat covers compatible with lateral airbags, vehicle covers, door sill protectors, translucent bumper protectors.

* To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned and secured correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

"Mulitmedia":

audio systems, satellite navigation systems, Bluetooth system, speakers, DVD player, USB Box, Wi-Fi on board...

Installation of radio communication transmitters

Before installing any after-market radio communication transmitter, you can contact a PEUGEOT dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

By visting a PEUGEOT dealer, you can also obtain products for cleaning and maintenance (exterior and interior) - including products from the "TECHNATURE" range, products for topping up (screenwash...), paint touch-up pens and aerosols for the exact colour of your vehicle, refills (sealant cartridge for the temporary puncture repair kit...) ...

Depending on the legislation in force in the country, it may be compulsory to have a high visibility safety vest, warning triangle and spare bulbs and fuses available in the vehicle.

The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories which are not recommended by PEUGEOT may result in a failure of your vehicle's electronic system and excessive electrical consumption.

Please note this precaution. You are advised to contact a PEUGEOT representative to be shown the range of recommended equipment and accessories.

MODELS:	ENGINES AND GEARBOXES		
Model codes: 4C... 4E... 4H...	**8FR-0**	**5FS-0**	**5FS-9**
PETROL ENGINES	**1.4 litre VTi 98 hp**	**1.6 litre VTi 120 hp**	
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 397	1 598	
Bore x stroke (mm)	77 x 75	77 x 85.8	
Max power: EU standard (kW)	72	88	
Max power engine speed (rpm)	6 000	5 660	
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	136	160	
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	4 000	4 250	
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	
Catalytic converter	Yes	Yes	
GEARBOXES	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (5-speed)	Automatic (4-speed)
OIL CAPACITIES (in litres)			
Engine (with filter replacement)	-	4.25	4.25

4C...: 5-door. **4E...:** SW with bench rear seat. **4H...:** SW with individual rear seats.

MODELS:	ENGINES AND GEARBOXES				
Model codes: 4C... 4E... 4H...	**N6A-C N6A-5**	**5FE-J**	**5FV-8**	**5FV-A**	**5FM-J**
PETROL ENGINES	**1.6 litre 16V 110 hp**	**1.6 litre THP 150 hp**	**1.6 litre THP 156 hp**		**1.6 litre THP 163 hp**
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 587	1 598	1 598		1 598
Bore x stroke (mm)	82 x 107	77 x 85.8	77 x 85.8		77 x 85.8
Max power: EU standard (kW)	78	110	115		120
Max power engine speed (rpm)	5 600	6 000	6 000		6 000
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	142	240	240		240
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	4 000	1 400	1 400		1 400
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded		Unleaded
Catalytic converter	Yes	Yes	Yes		Yes
GEARBOXES	Manual (5-speed)	Automatic (6-speed)	Manual (6-speed)	Automatic (6-speed)	Automatic (6-speed)
OIL CAPACITIES (in litres)					
Engine (with filter replacement)	3.25	-	-	-	-

4C...: 5-door. **4E...:** SW with bench rear seat. **4H...:** SW with individual rear seats.

MODELS:	ENGINES AND GEARBOXES
Model codes: **4C... 4E... 4H...**	**5FU-8**
PETROL ENGINES	**1.6 litre THP 200 hp**
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 598
Bore x stroke (mm)	77 x 85.8
Max power: EU standard (kW)	147
Max power engine speed (rpm)	5 800
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	275
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	1 700
Fuel	Unleaded
Catalytic converter	Yes
GEARBOXES	Manual (6-speed)
OIL CAPACITIES (in litres)	
Engine (with filter replacement)	4.25

4C...: 5-door. **4E...:** SW with bench rear seat. **4H...:** SW with individual rear seats.



WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)

Petrol engines	1.4 litre VTi 98 hp	1.6 litre 16V 110 hp	1.6 litre VTi 120 hp	
Gearboxes	**Manual**	**Manual**	**Manual**	**Automatic**
Model codes: 4C...	**8FR-0**	**N6A-C N6A-5**	**5FS-0**	**5FS-9**
- Unladen weight	1 271	1 302	1 287	1 312
- Kerb weight	1 346	1 377	1 362	1 387
- Payload	509	518	528	523
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 780	1 820	1 815	1 835
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	2 980	3 020	3 315	3 085
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1 200	1 200	1 500	1 250
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 450	1 450	1 500	1 500
- Unbraked trailer	670	685	680	690
- Recommended nose weight	60	60	76	60

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.



WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)

Petrol engines	1.6 litre THP 150 hp	1.6 litre THP 156 hp		1.6 litre THP 163 hp	1.6 litre THP 200 hp
Gearboxes	**Automatic**	**Manual**	**Automatic**	**Automatic**	**Manual**
Model codes: 4C...	**5FE-J**	**5FV-8**	**5FV-A**	**5FM-J**	**5FU-8**
- Unladen weight	1 358	1 315	1 368	1 358	1 399
- Kerb weight	1 433	1 390	1 443	1 433	1 474
- Payload	502	525	502	502	451
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 860	1 840	1 870	1 860	1 850
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	2 660	3 390	3 470	2 660	1 850
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	800	1 550	1 600	800	X
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	800	1 650	1 650	800	X
- Unbraked trailer	710	695	720	710	X
- Recommended nose weight	65	70	70	65	X

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.



WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)

Petrol engines	1.4 litre VTi 98 hp	1.6 litre 16V 110 hp	1.6 litre VTi 120 hp	
Gearboxes	**Manual**	**Manual**	**Manual**	**Automatic**
Model codes: 4E...	**8FR-0**	**N6A-C N6A-5**	**5FS-0**	**5FS-9**
- Unladen weight	1 320	1 374	1 320	1 356
- Kerb weight	1 395	1 449	1 395	1 431
- Payload	600	576	602	592
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 920	1 950	1 922	1 948
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	3 020	3 150	3 272	3 298
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1 100	1 200	1 350	1 350
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 100	1 400	1 500	1 500
- Unbraked trailer	695	720	695	715
- Recommended nose weight	60	75	65	60

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.



WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)

Petrol engines	1.6 litre THP 156 hp		1.6 litre THP 163 hp
Gearboxes	**Manual**	**Automatic**	**Automatic**
Model codes: 4E...	**5FV-8**	**5FV-A**	**5FM-J**
- Unladen weight	1 400	1 428	1 436
- Kerb weight	1 475	1 503	1 511
- Payload	540	537	584
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 940	1 965	2 020
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	3 390	3 515	2 820
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1 450	1 550	800
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 600	1 550	800
- Unbraked trailer	735	750	750
- Recommended nose weight	65	65	75

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.



WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)			
Petrol engines	**1.6 litre 16V 110 hp**	**1.6 litre VTi 120 hp**	
Gearboxes	**Manual**	**Manual**	**Automatic**
Model codes: 4H...	**N6A-C N6A-5**	**5FS-0**	**5FS-9**
- Unladen weight	1 462	1 406	1 430
- Kerb weight	1 537	1 481	1 505
- Payload	648	694	700
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 110	2 100	2 130
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	3 110	3 300	3 080
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1 000	1 200	950
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 350	1 400	1 100
- Unbraked trailer	750	740	750
- Recommended nose weight	75	60	55

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.



WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)

Petrol engines	1.6 litre THP 150 hp	1.6 litre THP 156 hp		1.6 litre THP 163 hp
Gearboxes	Automatic	Manual	Automatic	Automatic
Model codes: 4H...	5FE-J	5FV-8	5FV-A	5FM-J
- Unladen weight	1 487	1 481	1 509	1 487
- Kerb weight	1 562	1 556	1 584	1 562
- Payload	633	649	651	633
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 120	2 130	2 160	2 120
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	2 920	3 380	3 510	2 920
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	800	1 250	1 350	800
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	800	1 400	1 350	800
- Unbraked trailer	750	750	750	750
- Recommended nose weight	75	60	60	75

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

MODELS:	ENGINES AND GEARBOXES	
Model codes: 4C... 4R... 4E... 4H...	**9HJ-C**	**9HP-0**
DIESEL ENGINES	**1.6 litre HDi 92 hp**	**1.6 litre HDi PEF 92 hp**
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 560	
Bore x stroke (mm)	75 x 88.3	
Max power: EU standard (kW)	68	
Max power engine speed (rpm)	4 000	
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	230	
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	1 750	
Fuel	Diesel	
Catalytic converter	Yes	
Particle emission filter (PEF)	No	Yes
GEARBOXES	Manual (5-speed)	
OIL CAPACITIES (in litres)		
Engine (with filter replacement)	-	

4C...: 5-door.
4R...: 5-door "Van".
4E...: SW with bench rear seat.
4H...: SW with individual rear seats.

MODELS:	ENGINES AND GEARBOXES		
Model codes: **4C... 4R... 4E... 4H...**	**9HG-C**	**9HR-8/S** **9HR-8/1S** **9HR-8/2S**	**9HR-8/PS** **9HR-8/1PS** **9HR-8/2PS**
DIESEL ENGINES	**1.6 litre HDi 115 hp**	**1.6 litre e-HDi PEF 112 hp**	
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 560		
Bore x stroke (mm)	75 x 88.3		
Max power: EU standard (kW)	84	82	
Max power engine speed (rpm)	3 600		
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	254	270	
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	1 750		
Fuel	Diesel		
Catalytic converter	Yes		
Particle emission filter (PEF)	No	Yes	
GEARBOXES	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (6-speed)	Electronic gear control (6-speed)
OIL CAPACITIES (in litres)			
Engine (with filter replacement)	-		

.../S: model fitted with Stop & Start.

.../1S: model fitted with Stop & Start and very low rolling resistance tyres (e.g.: MICHELIN Energy Saver).

.../2S: model fitted with Stop & Start and ultra low rolling resistanc tyres (e.g.: MICHELIN UBRR).

4C...: 5-door.
4R...: 5-door "Van".
4E...: SW with bench rear seat.
4H...: SW with individual rear seats.

MODELS:	ENGINES AND GEARBOXES	
Model codes: 4C... 4E... 4H...	**RHE-8**	**RHH-A**
DIESEL ENGINES	**2.0 litre HDi PEF 150 hp**	**2.0 litre HDi PEF 163 hp**
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 997	1 997
Bore x stroke (mm)	85 x 88	85 x 88
Max power: EU standard (kW)	110	120
Max power engine speed (rpm)	3 750	3 750
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	340	340
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	2 000	2 000
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel
Catalytic converter	Yes	Yes
Particle emission filter (PEF)	Yes	Yes
GEARBOXES	Manual (6-speed)	Automatic (6-speed)
OIL CAPACITIES (in litres)		
Engine (with filter replacement)	5.25	-

4C...: 5-door. **4E...:** SW with bench rear seat. **4H...:** SW with individual rear seats.



WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)

Diesel engines	1.6 litre HDi 92 hp	1.6 litre HDi PEF 92 hp
Gearboxes	**Manual**	**Manual**
Model codes: 4C... 4R...	**9HJ-C**	**9HP-0**
- Unladen weight	1 301	1 303 - 1 316
- Kerb weight	1 376	1 378 - 1 391
- Payload	509	512 - 514
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 810	1 815 - 1 830
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	2 610	2 915 - 3 130
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	800	1 100 - 1 300
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	800	1 300
- Unbraked trailer	680	685
- Recommended nose weight	65	60 - 55

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.



WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)

Diesel engines	1.6 litre HDi 115 hp	1.6 litre e-HDi PEF 112 hp		
Gearboxes	Manual	Manual	Electronic gear control	
Model codes: 4C... 4R...	9HG-C	9HR-8/S 9HR-8/1S 9HR-8/2S	9HR-8/PS 9HR-8/1PS	9HR-8/2PS
- Unladen weight	1 299	1 318	1 205	1 205
- Kerb weight	1 374	1 393	1 280	1 280
- Payload	511	542	655	655
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 810	1 860	1 860	1 860
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	2 610	3 160	3 160	2 260
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	800	1 300	1 300	400
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	800	1 500	1 500	600
- Unbraked trailer	680	695	640	400
- Recommended nose weight	65	60	60	60

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.



WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)		
Diesel engines	**2 litre HDi PEF 150 hp**	**2 litre HDi PEF 163 hp**
Gearboxes	**Manual**	**Automatic**
Model codes: 4C...	**RHE-8**	**RHH-A**
- Unladen weight	1 398	1 428
- Kerb weight	1 473	1 503
- Payload	502	532
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 900	1 960
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	3 600	3 460
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1 700	1 500
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 700	1 500
- Unbraked trailer	735	750
- Recommended nose weight	70	66

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.



WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)		
Diesel engines	**1.6 litre HDi 92 hp**	**1.6 litre HDi PEF 92 hp**
Gearboxes	**Manual**	**Manual**
Model codes: 4E...	**9HJ-C**	**9HP-0**
- Unladen weight	1 390	1 378
- Kerb weight	1 465	1 453
- Payload	610	570
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 000	1 948
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	2 800	3 148
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	800	1 200
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	800	1 300
- Unbraked trailer	730	725
- Recommended nose weight	75	60

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.



WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)

Diesel engines	1.6 litre e-HDi PEF 112 hp	
Gearboxes	**Manual**	**Electronic gear control**
Model codes: 4E...	**9HR-8/S**	**9HR-8/PS**
- Unladen weight	1 407	1 399
- Kerb weight	1 482	1 474
- Payload	563	576
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 970	1 975
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	3 120	3 125
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1 150	1 150
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 400	1 300
- Unbraked trailer	740	735
- Recommended nose weight	60	60

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.



WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)	
Diesel engines	**2.0 litre HDi PEF 150 hp**
Gearboxes	**Manual**
Model codes: 4E...	**RHE-8**
- Unladen weight	1 430
- Kerb weight	1 505
- Payload	600
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 030
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	3 650
- Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1 500
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 700
- Unbraked trailer	750
- Recommended nose weight	70

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.



WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)

Diesel engines	1.6 litre HDi 92 hp	1.6 litre HDi PEF 92 hp
Gearboxes	**Manual**	**Manual**
Model codes: 4H...	**9HJ-C**	**9HP-0**
- Unladen weight	1 460	1 430
- Kerb weight	1 535	1 505
- Payload	640	670
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 100	2 100
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	2 900	3 100
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	800	1 000
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	800	1 200
- Unbraked trailer	750	750
- Recommended nose weight	75	60

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.



WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)		
Diesel engines	**1.6 litre e-HDi PEF 112 hp**	
Gearboxes	**Manual**	**Electronic Gear Control**
Model codes: 4H...	**9HR-8/S**	**9HR-8/PS**
- Unladen weight	1 485	1 488
- Kerb weight	1 560	1 563
- Payload	660	662
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 145	2 150
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	3 145	3 150
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1 000	1 000
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 200	1 200
- Unbraked trailer	740	750
- Recommended nose weight	60	60

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.



WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)	
Diesel engines	**2.0 litre HDi PEF 163 hp**
Gearboxes	**Automatic**
Model codes: 4H...	**RHH-A**
- Unladen weight	1 603
- Kerb weight	1 678
- Payload	642
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 245
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	3 445
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1 200
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 200
- Unbraked trailer	750
- Recommended nose weight	56

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

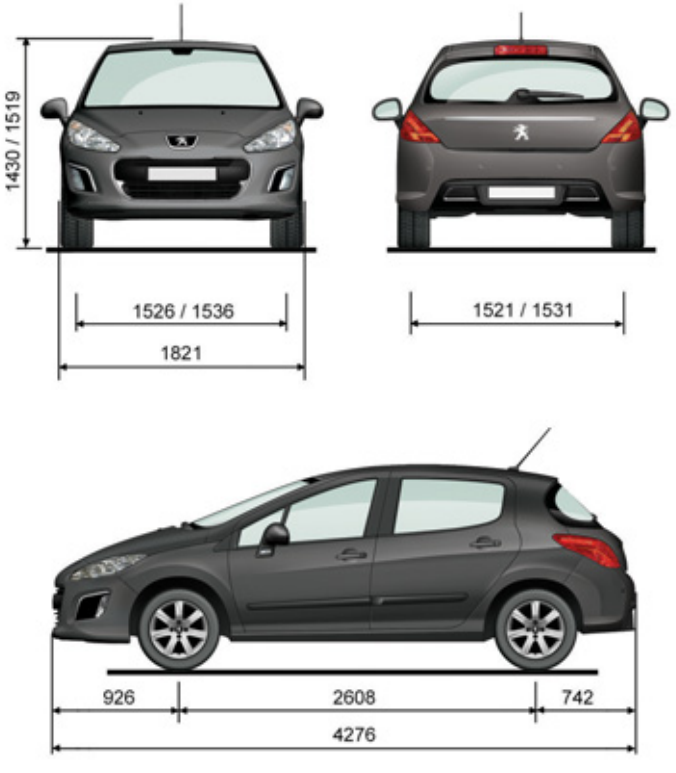
The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

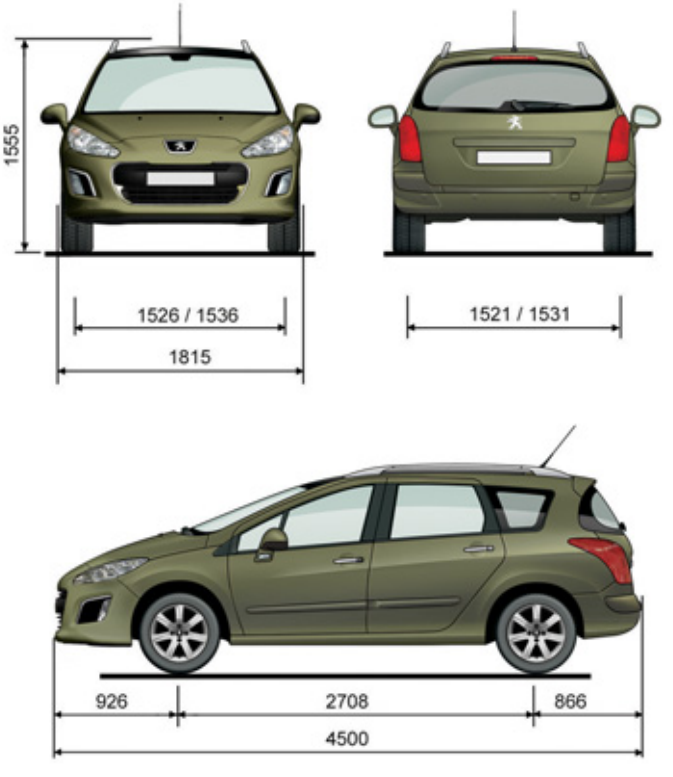
High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

DIMENSIONS (IN MM)

308 saloon



308 SW



IDENTIFICATION MARKINGS

Various visible markings for the identification and tracking of your vehicle.

A. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) under the bonnet.

This number is engraved on the bodywork near the damper support.

To gain access to it, raise the plastic cover.

B. VIN on the windscreen lower crossmember.

This number is indicated on a self-adhesive label which is visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's plate.

This plate is riveted onto the engine mounting.

or

D. Manufacturer's label.

This number is indicated on a self-destroying label affixed to the right hand centre pillar.

This plate / label also indicates the kerb weight, the gross vehicle weight (GVW) and the gross train weight (GTW).



E. Tyre/paint label.

This label is affixed to the middle pillar, on the driver's side.

It bears the following information:

- the tyre inflation pressures with and without load,
- the tyre sizes,
- the inflation pressure of the spare wheel,
- the paint colour code.

The tyre pressures must be checked when the tyres are cold, at least once a month.

If the tyre pressures are too low, this increases fuel consumption.



EMERGENCY OR ASSISTANCE CALL

EMERGENCY OR ASSISTANCE CALL

PEUGEOT CONNECT SOS



In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. Flashing of the green LED and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the PEUGEOT CONNECT SOS call centre*.

The green LED remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It goes off at the end of communication.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request. The green LED goes off. Cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

To cancel a call, reply to the PEUGEOT CONNECT SOS call centre that it was a mistake.

PEUGEOT CONNECT SOS immediately locates you vehicle, starts communication with you in your language**, and where necessary sends the appropriate public emergency services**. In countries where the team is not operational, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call sent directly to the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

* Subject to the general conditions for the service available from dealers and to technological and technical limitations.

** Depending on the geographical cover of PEUGEOT CONNECT SOS, PEUGEOT CONNECT ASSISTANCE and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.

The list of countries covered and PEUGEOT CONNECT services are available from dealers or at www.peugeot.co.uk.

PEUGEOT CONNECT ASSISTANCE



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.

A voice message confirms that the call has been made**.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.

The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

OPERATION OF THE SYSTEM



When the ignition is switched on, the green LED comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.



If the orange LED flashes: there is a system fault.

If the orange LED is on continuously: the backup battery must be replaced.

In either case, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

If you purchased your vehicle outside the PEUGEOT dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modified to suit your wishes. In a multi-lingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

For technical reasons and in particular to improve the quality of PEUGEOT CONNECT services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

EMERGENCY OR ASSISTANCE CALL USING PEUGEOT CONNECT MEDIA

PEUGEOT CONNECT SOS

Warning - the emergency call and the services are only active if the internal telephone is used with a valid SIM card. With a Bluetooth telephone and without a SIM card, these services are not operational.



In an emergency, press the SOS button until an audible signal is heard and a "Confirmation / Cancellation" screen is displayed (if valid SIM card inserted).

A call is made to the PEUGEOT Emergency team which receives locating information from the vehicle and can send a detailed alert to the relevant emergency services.

In countries in which the team is not operational, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is sent to the emergency services (112).

If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

The message "Deteriorated emergency call" associated with flashing of the orange indicator lamp indicates a malfunction. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

PEUGEOT CONNECT ASSISTANCE

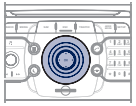


Press this button for access to PEUGEOT services.



Select "Customer call" to request any information about the PEUGEOT marque.

Customer call





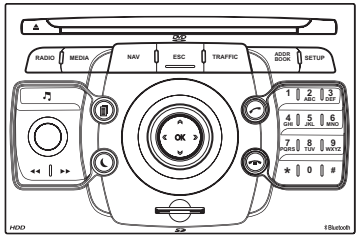
Select "PEUGEOT Assistance" to make a roadside assistance call.

PEUGEOT Assistance



This service is subject to conditions and availability. Consult a PEUGEOT dealer. If you have purchased your vehicle outside the PEUGEOT dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modified to suit your wishes.

400
400
500
500
400
400



Peugeot Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D)

MULTIMEDIA AUDIO SYSTEM / BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE GPS EUROPE

The Peugeot Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D) is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. If it is to be installed in another vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer for configuration of the system.

For safety reasons, it is imperative that the driver carries out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.

When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the Peugeot Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D) switches off following activation of the Energy Economy mode.

Certain functions described in this handbook will become available during the course of the year.

CONTENTS

01 First steps	p.	248
02 Voice commands and steering mounted controls	p.	250
03 General operation	p.	253
04 Navigation - Guidance	p.	258
05 Traffic information	p.	267
06 Radio	p.	269
07 Music media players	p.	270
08 Using the telephone	p.	275
09 Screen menu map	p.	280
Frequently asked questions	p.	285

01 FIRST STEPS
Peugeot Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D) CONTROL PANEL

Access to the Media Menu (audio CD, Jukebox, Auxiliary input).
Display the list of tracks.
Change the audio source.

Access to the Navigation Menu and display recent destinations.

Abandon the current operation.
Long press: return to main display.

Access to the Traffic Menu.

Access to the Address book Menu.

Access to the Radio Menu
Display the list of stations in alphabetical order (FM band) or frequency order (AM band).

Audio settings (Balance / Fader, Bass / Treble, Musical ambience...).

Adjust volume (each source is independent, including navigation messages and alerts).
Long press: reinitialise the system.
Short press: mute.



Access to the "SETUP" menu (configuration).
Long press: GPS coverage.

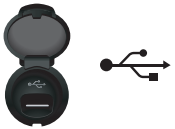
Enter the numbers or letters using the alpha-numeric keypad.
Presetting 10 radio frequencies.

Automatic search down/up for radio frequencies.
Select previous/next CD or MP3 track.

SD card reader.

Short press: clears the last character.





Press to left / right:

With display of the "RADIO" screen: select the previous / next frequency.

With display of the "MEDIA" screen: select the previous / next track.

With display of the "MAP" or "NAV": horizontal movement on the map.

Press up / down:

With display of the "RADIO" screen: select the previous / next radio station in the list.

With display of the "MEDIA" screen: select the MP3 folder.

With display of the "MAP" or "NAV": vertical movement on the map.

Go the the next or previous page in a menu.

Movement on the virtual keypad displayed.

OK: confirm the highlighted item.

Select successive display in the screen of "MAP" / "NAV" (if navigation in progress) / "TEL" (if a call is in progress) / "RADIO" or "MEDIA" being played.

CALL: access to the Phone menu.

Bluetooth connection, accept an incoming call.



Rotate the dial:

With display of the "RADIO" screen: select the previous / next radio station in the list.

With display of the "MEDIA" screen: select the previous / next CD or MP3 track.

With display of the "MAP" or "NAV": zoom the map in/out.

Movement of the menu selection cursor.

Normal display or black screen.

END CALL: access to the Phone menu.

End a call in progress or reject an incoming call, Bluetooth connection.

VOICE COMMANDS - VOICE RECO. INITIATION



1

Before using the system for the first time, you are advised to listen to, say and practice the tutorial.

2



Press the SETUP button and select the "Language & Speech" function.
Turn the ring and select "Voice control".
Activate voice recognition.
Select "Tutorial".



The phrases to be spoken according to the context are indicated in the tables below.
Speak and Peugeot Connect Media acts.



Pressing the end of the lighting control stalk activates voice recognition.



CONTEXT	SAY	ACTION
GENERAL	Help address book	Access to the address book help
	Help voice control	Access to the voice recognition help
	Help media	Access to the media management help
	Help navigation	Access to the guidance, navigation help
	Help telephone	Access to the telephone help
	Help radio	Access to the radio help
	Cancel	To cancel a voice command which is in progress
	Correction	Request to correct the last voice recognition carried out
		Clear
RADIO	Select station	Select a radio station
	Station <tts:stationName>	Select a radio station using its RDS description <tts:station Name> from the RADIO list
	Read out station list	Listen to the list of stations available
	Enter frequency	Listen to the frequency of the current radio station
	Select wave band	Choose the frequency waveband (AM or FM)
	AM	Change the frequency waveband to AM
	FM	Change the frequency waveband to FM
	TA on	Activate Traffic Info (TA)
	TA off	Deactivate Traffic Info
NAVIGATION	Destination input	Command to enter a new destination address
	Voice advice off	Deactivate the spoken guidance instructions
	Voice advice on	Activate the spoken guidance instructions
	Save address	Save an address in the address book
	Start guidance	Start guidance (once the address has been entered)
	Abort guidance	Stop the guidance
	Navigate entry	Start guidance to an entry in the address book
	POI Search	Start guidance to a point of interest

VOICE COMMANDS - VOICE RECO. INITIATION



CONTEXT	SAY	ACTION
MEDIA	Media	Select the MEDIA source
	Select media	Choose a source
	Single slot	Select the CD player source
	Jukebox	Select the Jukebox source
	USB	Select the USB player source
	External device	Select the audio AUX input source
	SD-Card	Select the SD card source
	Track <1 - 1000>	Select a specific track (number between 1 and 1 000) on the active MEDIUM
	Folder <1 - 1000>	Select a Folder (number between 1 and 1000) on the active MEDIUM
TELEPHONE	Phone menu	Open the Telephone Menu
	Enter number	Enter a telephone number to be called
	Phone book	Open the phone book
	Dial	Make a call
	Save number	Save a number in the phone book
	Accept	Accept an incoming call
	Reject	Reject an incoming call
ADDRESS BOOK	Address book menu	Open the address book
	Call <entry>	Call file using its <file> description as described in the address book
	Navigate <entry>	Start guidance to an address in the address book using its <file> description

02 VOICE COMMANDS AND STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS

STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS

Wiper stalk: display "RADIO" and "MEDIA".

Lighting stalk: activate voice commands with a short press; indication of the current navigation instruction with a long press.

Radio: select the previous/next pre-set station.

CD audio: select the previous/next track.

If "MEDIA" is displayed in the screen:

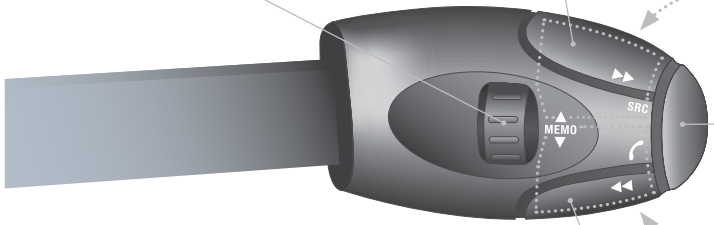
MP3 CD / SD CARD / JUKEBOX: select the previous/next folder.

Select the previous/next item in the contacts list.

Radio: automatic search for a higher frequency.

CD / SD CARD / JUKEBOX: select the next track.

CD / SD CARD / JUKEBOX: continuous press: fast forwards.



Volume increase.

Change audio source.

Start a call from the contacts list

Call/hang up the telephone.

Confirm a selection.

Press for more than 2 seconds: telephone menu.

Mute: press the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.

The sound is restored by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

Volume decrease.

Radio: automatic search for a lower frequency.

CD / SD CARD / JUKEBOX: select the previous track.

CD / SD CARD / JUKEBOX: continuous press: fast backwards.

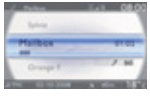
03 GENERAL OPERATION
DISPLAY ACCORDING TO THE CONTEXT

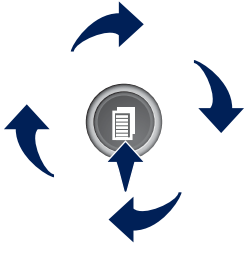
Press the MODE button several times in succession to gain access to the following displays:

RADIO / MUSIC MEDIA / VIDEO



TELEPHONE
(If a conversation is in progress)







FULL SCREEN MAP



NAVIGATION
(If guidance is in progress)



SETUP:
access to the "SETUP" Menu: system language* and voice functions*, voice initialisation (section 09), date and time*, display, unit and system parameters.

* Available according to model.



TRAFFIC:
access to the Traffic Menu: display of the current traffic alerts.



MEDIA:
"DVD-audio" menu
"DVD-Video" menu



Long press: access to the GPS coverage and to the demonstration mode.

For maintenance of the screen, the use of a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) is recommended, without any additional product.



For a detailed global view of the menus available, refer to the "Screen menu map" section of this handbook.

03 GENERAL OPERATION

DISPLAY ACCORDING TO THE CONTEXT

Pressing OK gives access to short-cut menus according to the display on the screen.

NAVIGATION (IF GUIDANCE IS IN PROGRESS):



- 1 **Abort guidance**
- 1 **Repeat advice**
- 1 **Block road**
  - 2 Unblock
  - 2 More
  - 2 Less
  - 2 Calculate
  - 2 Zoom/Scroll
  - 2 Browse route
- 1 **Route info**
  - 2 Show destination
  - 2 Trip info
    - 3 Route type
    - 3 Avoid
    - 3 Satellites
    - 3 Stopovers
  - 2 Browse route
  - 2 Zoom/Scroll
- 1 **Voice advice**
- 1 **Route options**
  - 2 Route type
  - 2 Route dynamics
  - 2 Avoidance criteria
  - 2 Recalculate

TELEPHONE:

- 1 **End call**
- 1 **Hold call**
- 1 **Dial**
- 1 **DTMF-Tones**
- 1 **Private mode**
- 1 **Micro off**

MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS:

- 1 **TA**
- 1 **Play options**
  - 2 Normal order
  - 2 Random track
  - 2 Scan
- 1 **Select media**

03 GENERAL OPERATION

DISPLAY ACCORDING TO THE CONTEXT

RADIO:

- 1 **In FM mode**
  - 2 TA
  - 2 RDS
  - 2 Radiotext
  - 2 Regional prog.
  - 2 AM
- 1 **In AM mode**
  - 2 TA
  - 2 Refresh AM list
  - 2 FM

FULL SCREEN MAP:

- 1 **Abort guidance / Resume guidance**
- 1 **Set destination / Add stopover**
- 1 **POIs nearby**
- 1 **Position info**



- 2 Guidance options
  - 3 Navigate to
  - 3 Dial
  - 3 Save position
  - 3 Zoom/Scroll
- 1 **Map Settings**
  - 2 2D Map
  - 2 2.5D Map
  - 2 3D Map
  - 2 North Up
  - 2 Heading Up
- 1 **Zoom/Scroll**

AUDIO DVD (LONG PRESS):

- 1 **Stop**
  - 2 Group
    - 3 Group 1 .2/n
  - 2 Play options
    - 3 Normal order / Random track / Scan
- 1 **TA**
  - 2 Select media

VIDEO DVD (LONG PRESS):

1 **Play**

2 Stop

2 DVD menus

3 DVD menu

3 DVD top menu

3 List of titles

3 List of chapters

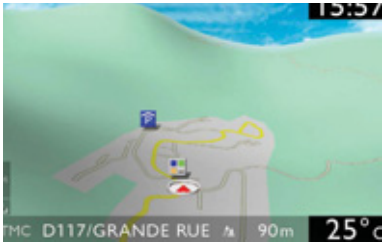
2 DVD Options

3 Audio

3 Subtitles

3 Angle

Examples:







- **the map setting which allows the map to be displayed flat, in perspective or in 3D.**

Flat map

Map in perspective

Map in 3D



- **configuration of the system by means of voice commands.**

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

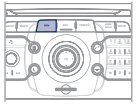
SELECTING A DESTINATION

The "NAVIGATION" voice commands are listed in section 02.
During guidance, a long press on the end of the lighting stalk repeats the last guidance instruction.

1



Press the NAV button.



The list of the last 20 destinations appears under the Navigation Menu function.

2



Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press OK to confirm.

Navigation Menu



3



Select the "Destination input" function and press OK to confirm.

Destination input

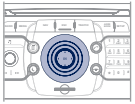


4



Select the "Address input" function and press OK to confirm.

Address input



5



Once the country has been selected, turn the ring and select the town function. Press OK to confirm.



6



Select the letters of the town one by one confirming each time by pressing OK.



A pre-set list (by entering the first few letters) of the towns in the country selected can be accessed via the LIST button on the virtual keypad.

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

It is possible to scroll the map using the 4-direction navigator. It is possible to select its orientation via the short-cut menu of the "Full screen map". Press OK then select "Map Settings" and confirm.

7



Turn the ring and select OK.
Press OK to confirm.



To speed up the process, the post code can be entered directly after selecting the "Postal code" function.
Use the virtual keypad to enter the letters and digits.

8



Repeat steps 5 to 7 for the "Street" and "House number" functions.



Select the "Save to address book" function to record the address entered in a directory file. Press OK to confirm the selection.
The Peugeot Connect Media allows more than 4 000 contact records to be saved.

To delete a destination; from steps 1 to 3, select "Choose from last destinations".
A long press on one of the destinations displays a list of actions from which you can select:

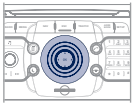
Delete entry **Delete list**

9



Then select "Start route guidance" and the press OK to confirm.

Start route guidance



10



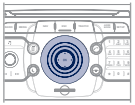
Select the route type:
"Fast route", "Short route", or "Optimized route" and press OK to confirm.



11



Select the road with the colour corresponding to the route chosen and press OK to confirm and start guidance.



It is also possible to select a destination via "Choose from address book" or "Choose from last destinations", by selecting a junction, a town centre, geographic coordinates, or directly on the "Map".

Choose from address book **Choose from last destinations**

SETTING AND NAVIGATING TO MY "HOME ADDRESS"

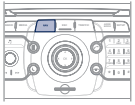
To be set as the "Home address", an address must first be entered in the address book, for example from "Destination input" / "Address input" then "Save to address book".

1



Press the NAV button twice to display the Navigation Menu.

Navigation Menu



2



Select "Destination input" and confirm. Then select "Choose from address book" and confirm.

Destination input

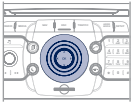


3



Select your home address and confirm. Then select "Edit entry" and confirm.

Edit entry



4



Select "Set as Home address" and confirm to save.

Set as home address



To start navigation towards "Home", press NAV twice to display the Navigation Menu, select "Destination input" and confirm.
Then select "Navigate HOME" and confirm to start guidance.

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

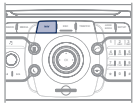
ROUTE OPTIONS

When the map is displayed on the screen, you can select "Map Settings" then "2D Map / 2.5D Map / 3D Map / North Up / Heading Up". The display of buildings in 3D mode depends on the progress in town mapping.

1



Press the NAV button.



2



Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press OK to confirm.

Navigation Menu

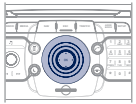


3



Select the "Route options" function and press OK to confirm.

Route options



4



Select the "Route type" function and press OK to confirm. This function allows you to change the route type.

Route type



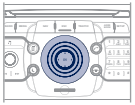
5



Select the "Route dynamics" function.

This function provides access to the "Traffic independent", "Semi-dynamic" and "Dynamic" options.

Route dynamics

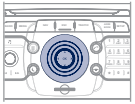


6



Select the "Avoidance criteria" function. This function provides access to the "Avoid" options (motorways, toll roads, ferries, tunnels).

Avoidance criteria



7



Turn the ring and select the "Recalculate" function to take into account the route options selected. Press OK to confirm.

Recalculate

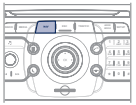


ADDING A STOPOVER

Stopovers can be added to or deleted from the route once the destination has been selected.

1 

Press the NAV button.



2 

Press the NAV button again or select the "Navigation" Menu function and press OK to confirm.

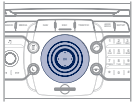
"Navigation" Menu



3 

Select the "Stopovers" function and press OK to confirm.

Stopovers



4 

Select the "Add stopover" function (5 stopovers maximum) and press OK to confirm.

Add stopover



5 

Enter a new address, for example.

Address input



6 

Once the new address has been entered, select "Start route guidance" and press OK to confirm.

Start route guidance



7 

Position the stopover on the list and press OK to confirm.



8 Repeat operations 1 to 7 as many times as necessary then select "Recalculate" and press OK to confirm.

To change the stopovers, repeat operations 1 to 3 and select "Rearrange route" (select a stopover, delete it or move it on the list using the ring to change the order, confirm its new position and finish with "Recalculate").

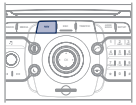
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

SEARCHING FOR POINTS OF INTEREST (POI)

The points of interest (POIs) indicate all of the service locations in the vicinity (hotels, various businesses, airports...).

1 

Press the NAV button.



2 

Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press OK to confirm.

Navigation Menu



3 

Select the "POI search" function and press OK to confirm.

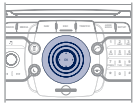
POI search



4 

Select the "POI nearby" function to search for POIs around the vehicle.

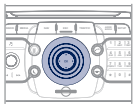
POI nearby



5 

Select the "POI near destination" function to search for POIs near the point of arrival of the route.

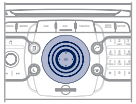
POI near destination



6 

Select the "POI in city" function to search for POIs in the city required. Select the country then enter the name of the city using the virtual keypad.

POI in city



A list of cities present in the country selected can be accessed via the LIST button on the virtual keypad.

7 

Select the "POI in country" function to search for POIs in the country required.

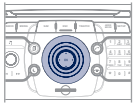
POI in country



8 

Select the "POI near route" function to search for POIs near the route.

POI near route



04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE



This icon appears when several POIs are grouped together in the same area. Zooming in on this icon shows details of the POIs.

LIST OF PRINCIPAL POINTS OF INTEREST (POI)

- Service station
- LPG station
- Garage
- PEUGEOT
- Motor racing circuit
- Covered car park
- Car park
- Rest area
- Hotel
- Restaurant
- Refreshment area
- Picnic area
- Cafeteria

- Airport
- Railway station
- Bus station
- Port
- Industrial estate
- Supermarket
- Bank
- Vending machine
- Tennis court
- Swimming pool
- Golf course
- Winter sports resort
- Theatre

- Cinema
- Theme parks
- Hospital
- Pharmacy
- Police station
- School
- Post office
- Museum
- Tourist information

- Automatic speed camera*
- Red light camera*
- Risk area*

* According to availability in the country.

UPDATING POIs

1



Download the "POIs" update file onto an SD card or USB memory stick from the Internet. This service is available at wipinforadars.co.uk.

i

The files must be copied to the root on the chosen medium.

2



Insert the medium (SD card or USB memory stick) containing the POI database into the system's SD card reader or USB port.

3

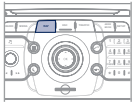


Press NAV, select Navigation Menu, then "Settings", then "Update personal POI".

Navigation Menu

Settings

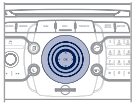
Update personal POI



4



Select the medium ("USB" or "SD-Card") used and press OK.



5

Successful downloading is confirmed by a message.
The system restarts.
The POIs version can be found in the SETUP \ System menu.

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

SPOKEN INSTRUCTION SETTINGS

1



When the navigation is displayed in the screen, press OK then select or deselect "Voice advice" to activate or deactivate the spoken guidance instructions.

Use the volume button to adjust the volume.



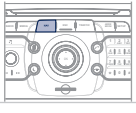
The volume of the Risk Areas POIs alert can only be adjusted during this type of alert.

POINTS OF INTEREST AND RISK AREAS SETTINGS

1



Press the NAV button.

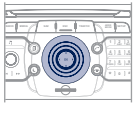


2



Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press OK to confirm.

Navigation Menu



3



Select the "Settings" function and press OK to confirm.

Settings

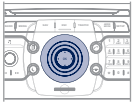


4



Select the "POI categories on Map" function to select the POIs to be displayed on the map by default.

POI categories on Map

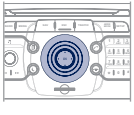


5



Select "Set parameters for risk areas" to gain access to the "Display on map", "Visual alert" and "Sound alert" functions.

Set parameters for risk areas



05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

CONFIGURE THE FILTERING AND DISPLAYING OF THE TMC MESSAGES

The TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages provide information relating to traffic and weather conditions, received in real time and transmitted to the driver audibly and visually on the navigation map.

The guidance system can then suggest an alternative route.

1



Press the TRAFFIC button.



The list of TMC messages appears under the Traffic Menu sorted in order of proximity.

2



Press the TRAFFIC button again or select the Traffic Menu function and press OK to confirm.

Traffic Menu



3



Select "Select preferred list" and press OK to confirm.



4



Select the filter of your choice:

Messages on route

All warning messages

Only warnings on route

All messages



5



Select "Geo. Filter".

Geo. Filter



When all of the messages on the route are selected, the addition of a geographic filter is recommended (within a radius of 3 miles (5 km) for example) to reduce the number of messages displayed on the map. The geographic filter follows the movement of the vehicle.

The filters are independent and their results are concealed.

We recommend:

- a filter over 6 miles (10 km) around the vehicle in heavy traffic,
- a filter over 30 miles (50 km) around the vehicle or a filter on the route on motorway journeys.

05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

PRINCIPAL TMC SYMBOLS

1 Black and blue triangle: general information, for example:

- Weather reports
- Traffic reports
- Wind
- Fog
- Parking
- Snow / ice

2 Red and yellow triangle: traffic information, for example:

- Modified signage
- Narrow carriageway
- Slippery surface
- Accident
- Delay
- Roadworks
- Risk of explosion
- Road closed
- Demonstration
- Danger
- No entry
- Traffic jam

RECEIVING TA MESSAGES

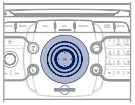
RDS TA - the station transmits TA messages.

RDS TA - the station does not transmit TA messages.

RDS - TA messages are not activated.

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

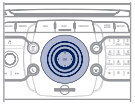
1 With the current audio source displayed on the screen, press the dial.



2 The shortcut menu for the source appears and gives access to:

TA

3 Select Traffic Announcements (TA) and press the dial to confirm and go to the associated settings.



06 RADIO

The external environment (hill, building, tunnel, underground car park...) may interfere with the reception, including in RDS following mode. This phenomenon is a normal result of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not in any way indicate a failure of the audio equipment.

SELECTING A STATION

1



Press the RADIO button to display the list of stations received locally sorted in alphabetical order.



Select the station required by turning the ring and press to confirm.





While listening to the radio, press buttons ◄◄ and ►► for the automatic search for a lower or higher frequency.



When the "RADIO" screen is displayed, turn the ring or use the 4-direction navigator to select the previous or next station on the list.



Press one of the buttons on the numeric keypad for more than 2 seconds to store the current station. A bleep confirms that it has been stored.

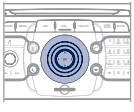
Press the button on the numeric keypad to recall the stored radio station.

RDS - REGIONAL MODE

1



When the current radio station is displayed on the screen, press OK.



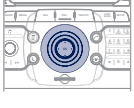
2

The radio source short-cuts menu appears and provides access to the following short-cuts:

TA
RDS
Radiotext
Regional prog.
AM



Select the function required and press OK to confirm to gain access to the corresponding settings.



RDS, if displayed, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

07 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

CD, MP3 / WMA CD, MP3 / WMA SD CARD / USB PLAYER

INFORMATION AND ADVICE

The MP3 format, an abbreviation of MPEG 1, 2 & 2.5 Audio Layer 3 and the WMA format, an abbreviation of Windows Media Audio and the property of Microsoft, are audio compression standards which permit the recording of several tens of music files on a single disc.

Connecting an IPod:

To play MP3 type files, connect the IPod using the USB port (limited functions).

To play ITunes files, connect the IPod using the auxiliary socket (AUX).

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select the ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet standard.

If the disc is recorded in another format it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

In order to be read, a USB memory stick must be formatted to FAT 32.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with the extension ".mp3" with a speed of between 8 Kbps and 320 Kbps and the extension ".wma" with a speed of between 5 Kbps and 384 Kbps.

It also supports the VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.

No other type of file (.mp4, .m3u...) can be played.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g.: " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

During play, exit the "SD-Card" or "USB" source before removing the SD card or the USB memory stick from its port.

To avoid any risk of theft, remove the SD card or the USB memory stick when you leave your vehicle with the roof open.

07 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

SELECTING / PLAYING CD, MP3 / WMA CD, MP3 / WMA SD CARD / USB PLAYER

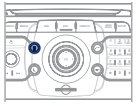
MP3 CDs, SD cards or USB peripherals are the compatible sources.

1 Insert the audio or MP3 CD in the player, the SD card in the card reader or the USB peripheral in the USB port. Play begins automatically.



The list of tracks or MP3/WMA files appears under "Media" Menu.

2  Press this button.



3  When the "MEDIA" screen is displayed, turn the ring up or down to select the previous or next compatible source.



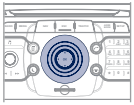
4 

Press the MEDIA button.



5  Press the MEDIA button again or select the "Media" Menu function and press OK to confirm.

"Media" Menu



6  Select the "Select media" function and press OK to confirm.

Select media



7  Select the music source required. Press OK to confirm. Play begins.



The playing and displaying of an MP3/WMA compilation may depend on the recording programme and/or the parameters used. We recommend the ISO 9660 recording standard.

07 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

JUKEBOX

COPYING A CD, A USB MEMORY STICK OR AN SD CARD ONTO THE HARD DISK

When copying is in progress, switching off the ignition will interrupt the process but it will resume directly when the ignition is switched on again.

1 Insert an audio / MP3 CD, a USB memory stick or an SD card.



! Check that the active MEDIA source is that of the medium used (CD, USB or SD card).

2 

Press the MEDIA button. Press the MEDIA button again or select Media Menu and press OK to confirm.



3 

Select "Jukebox management" then "Add files" and press OK at each step to confirm.

Add files



4 

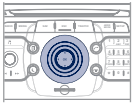
Select "Add files from MP3-Disc" for example and press OK to validate.

Add files from MP3-Disc



5 

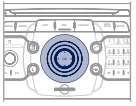
Select the tracks required then "Rip selection" or select all of the tracks using "Rip all".



6 

Select "[New folder]" to create a new folder or select an existing folder (created previously).

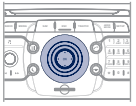
[New folder]



7 

"Do you want to change the names of the tracks that will be ripped?": select "Yes" to change them or "No".

Yes **No**



8 

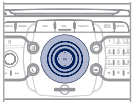
To copy an MP3 CD, then select "Real time ripping", "Fast ripping" / "High quality (192 kbit/sec)" or "Standard quality (128 kbit/sec)" then select "Start ripping".



9 

Confirm the warning message by pressing "OK" to start the copy.

OK



07 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

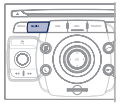
JUKEBOX
RENAMING OR DELETING AN ALBUM

Check that the active source is not the Jukebox in order to be able to rename or delete a track / folder.

1 Activate the playing of a source other than the Jukebox (CD, radio, etc...).

2 

Press the MEDIA button.



3 
Press the MEDIA button again or select Media Menu and press OK to confirm.



4 
Select "Jukebox management" and press OK to confirm.

Jukebox management



5 
Select "Modify content" and press OK confirm.

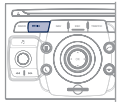
Modify content



LISTENING TO THE JUKEBOX

1 

Press the MEDIA button.
Press the MEDIA button again or select Media Menu and press OK to confirm.



2 
Select "Jukebox management" and press OK to confirm.



3 
Select "Play options" and press OK to confirm.
Select "Folders & Files" or "Playlists" then press OK to confirm.



Press the ESC button to return to the first file level.
Playlists can be created in the Jukebox.
Media Menu> Jukebox management> Create new playlist. Add the tracks required one by one then save the change. The "Playlists" play mode must then be selected.

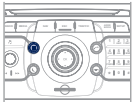
07 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

VIEWING A VIDEO DVD

1 Insert the DVD in the player. Play begins automatically.



2 If the DVD does not appear on the screen, press the MODE button to gain access to the "MEDIA" screen which displays the DVD screen.



3 Press the MEDIA button to gain access to the DVD menu at any time, or to the functions of the Media Menu which adjust the video (brightness/ contrast, image format...).



The 4-direction navigator and the chromed ring allow you to move the DVD selection cursor. Change chapter by pressing the ⏭ or ⏮ button.

! Select the video source required ("DVD-Video", "External device (AV)"). Press OK to confirm. Play begins.

USING AN EXTERNAL DEVICE (AUX)

AUDIO / VIDEO / RCA CABLE NOT SUPPLIED

1 Connect the portable device (MP3 player, camcorder, camera…) to the RCA sockets (white and red for audio; yellow for video) in the glove box using a JACK/RCA audio cable.

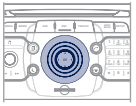
2 Press the MEDIA button then press it again or select the Media Menu function and press OK to confirm.



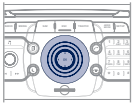
! If the external input is not activated, select "Ext. Device (Aux) management" to activate it.

3 Select "Select media" then "External device (AV)" and press OK to activate it.

External device



4 Select the AUX music source and press OK to confirm. Play begins automatically.



! The display and management of the controls is via the portable device.

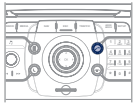
08 USING THE TELEPHONE

CHOOSING BETWEEN THE BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE / INTERNAL TELEPHONE

1



To activate the Bluetooth telephone or the internal telephone, press PICK UP.



2



Select Phone menu, then "Select phone" then choose between "Telephone off", "Use Bluetooth phone" or "Use internal phone". Press OK at each step to confirm.



!

The system can only be connected to one Bluetooth telephone and one SIM card (Internal telephone) at the same time.

In this case, the phone book is synchronised with the Bluetooth telephone.

08 USING THE TELEPHONE

PAIRING A BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE
FIRST CONNECTION

* The services available via the telephone depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth equipment used. Refer to your telephone's manual and your operator to check which services you have access to.

For safety reasons and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the Peugeot Connect Media must be carried out with the vehicle stationary and the ignition on.

Visit www.peugeot.co.uk for more information (compatibility, more help, ...).

1 Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (refer to the telephone instructions).



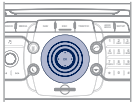
2 

Press the CALL button.



3 

If no telephone has been paired, the system prompts you to "Connect phone". Select "Yes" and press OK to confirm.



4 

Select "Search phone" and press OK to confirm. Then select the name of the telephone.

Search phone



5 

Enter the authentication code on the telephone. The code to be entered is displayed on the screen of the system.



Once the telephone has been connected, the Peugeot Connect Media can synchronise the address book and the call list. This synchronisation may take a few minutes*.

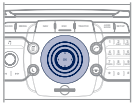




To pair another telephone, press the TEL button, then select Phone menu, then "Select phone" then "Connect Bluetooth phone" then select the telephone required.

Press OK at each step to confirm.





Pairing can be started from the telephone (refer to the telephone instructions).

To delete a pairing, press TEL, select "Connect phone" then "Delete pairing".

08 USING THE TELEPHONE

CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE

* The services available via the telephone depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth equipment used. Refer to your telephone's manual and your operator to check which services you have access to. A list of mobile telephones which offer the best range of services is available from dealers.

For safety reasons and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the Peugeot Connect Media must be carried out with the vehicle stationary and the ignition on.

Once the telephone has been connected, the Peugeot Connect Media can synchronise the address book and the call list. This synchronisation may take a few minutes*.

1 Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is visible to all.



2  Press the PICK UP button.



The list of telephones connected previously (4 maximum) appears in the multifunction screen. Select the telephone required then select "Connect phone" for a new connection. Select "Delete pairing" to cancel the connection to the telephone.

USING THE INTERNAL TELEPHONE WITH A SIM CARD

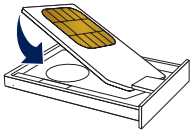
If you have declined to use the internal telephone for personal calls, you can still connect a Bluetooth telephone to receive your calls on the vehicle's audio system.

1



Extract the holder by pressing the eject button.

2





Install the SIM card in the holder and then insert it in the slot.

3

To remove the SIM card, repeat step 1.

i

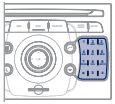
For safety reasons and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the SIM card installation operations must be carried out when stationary.

4



Enter the PIN code on the keypad then select OK and confirm.

Remember PIN



When entering your PIN code, tick the "Remember PIN" tab to allow use of the telephone without having to enter this code when it is used subsequently.

5



The system asks "Do you want to switch to the internal phone?", select "Yes" if you wish to use your SIM card for your personal calls. Otherwise, only the emergency call and the services will use the SIM card.



Once the SIM card has been installed, the system can synchronise the address book and the call list.

This synchronisation may take a few minutes.

08 USING THE TELEPHONE

Operating the telephone while driving is prohibited. It is recommended that you park safely or use in preference the steering mounted controls.

RECEIVING A CALL

1 An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

2 

Select the "Yes" tab to accept or "No" to refuse and confirm by pressing OK.

Yes No

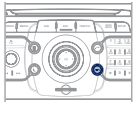


The PICK UP button accepts, the HANG UP button rejects the incoming call.

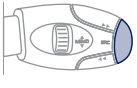
3 

To hang up, press the HANG UP button or press OK and select "End call" then confirm by pressing OK.

End call



Press the end of the steering mounted control to accept the call or end the call in progress.



MAKING A CALL

1 

Press the PICK UP button.



The list of the last 20 calls made and received in the vehicle appears under Phone menu. You can select a number and press OK to make the call.

2 

Select the Phone menu function and press OK to confirm.

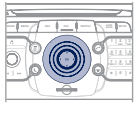
Phone menu



3 

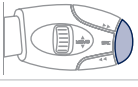
Select "Dial number", then dial the telephone number using the virtual keypad.

Dial number



It is also possible to select a number from the address book. You can select "Dial from address book". The Peugeot Connect Media can record up to 4096 entries.

Press the end of the steering mounted control for more than two seconds to open the address book.



It is always possible to start a call directly from the telephone; park the vehicle as a safety measure.

09 SCREEN MENU MAP

MAIN FUNCTION

- **option A**
  - **option A1**
  - **option A2**
- **option B...**

"Traffic" Menu

- **Select preferred list**
  - **Messages on route**
  - **Only warnings on route**
  - **All warning messages**
  - **All messages**
  - **Geo. Filter**
    - Deactivate PIN
    - Within 2 miles (3 km)
    - Within 3 miles (5 km)
    - Within 6 miles (10 km)
    - Within 30 miles (50 km)
  - **Read out settings**
    - **On confirmation**
    - **Incoming messages**
  - **TMC station information**

"Media" Menu

- **Select media**
  - **Audio CD / MP3-Disc / DVD-Audio / DVD-Video**
  - **Jukebox (Folders & Files)**
  - **SD-Card**
  - **USB**
  - **External device (audio/AV)**
- **Jukebox management**
  - **Add files**
  - **Create folder**
  - **Modify content**
  - **Edit playlist**
  - **Play options**
    - Folders & Files
    - Playlists
  - **Memory capacity**
- **Sound settings**
  - **Refer to the "Sound settings" menu details of which are shown on the next page.**
- **Video settings**
  - **Aspect ratio**
  - **Menu language**
  - **Display**
    - Brightness
    - Contrast
    - Colour

- **AUX standard**
- **Reset video settings**
- **Ext. Device (Aux) management**
- **Off / Audio / Audio and Video (AV)**



"Radio" Menu

- **Waveband**
  - **FM**
  - **AM**
- **Manual tune**
- **Sound settings**
  - **Refer to the "Sound settings" menu below.**

"Sound settings" Menu

- **Balance / Fader**
- **Bass / Treble**
- **Equalizer**
  - **Linear**
  - **Classic**
  - **Jazz**
  - **Rock/Pop**
  - **Techno**
  - **Vocal**
- **Mute rear speakers**
- **Loudness**
- **Speed dependent volume**
- **Reset sound settings**



"Navigation" Menu

- **Abort guidance / Resume guidance**
- **Destination input**
  - **Address input**
    - Country
    - City
    - Street
    - House number
    - Start route guidance
    - Postal code
    - Save to address book
    - Intersection
    - City district
    - Geo position
    - Map
  - **Navigate HOME**
  - **Choose from last destinations**
  - **Choose from address book**
- **Stopovers**
  - **Add stopover**
    - Address input
    - Navigate HOME
    - Choose from address book
    - Choose from last destinations
  - **Rearrange route**
  - **Replace stopover**
  - **Delete stopover**

- **Recalculate**
  - Fast route
  - Short route
  - Optimized route
- **POI search**
  - **POI nearby**
  - **POI near destination**
  - **POI in city**
  - **POI in country**
  - **POI near route**
- **Route options**
  - **Route type**
    - POI near destination
    - Short route
    - Optimized route
    - Subscr. service
- **Settings**
  - **Route dynamics**
    - Traffic independent
    - Semi-dynamic
    - Dynamic
  - **Avoidance criteria**
    - Avoid motorways
    - Avoid toll roads
    - Avoid tunnels
    - Avoid ferries
  - **Recalculate**



"Address book" Menu

- **Create new entry**
- **Show memory status**
- **Export address book**
- **Delete all voice entries**
- **Delete all entries**
- **Delete folder "My Addresses"**



"Phone" menu

- **Dial number**
- **Dial from address book**
- **Call lists**
- **Messages**
- **Select phone**
  - **Telephone off**
  - **Use Bluetooth phone**
  - **Use internal phone**
  - **Connect Bluetooth phone**
    - Search phone
      - Disconnect phone
      - Rename phone
      - Delete pairing
      - Delete all pairings
      - Show details

- **Settings**
  - **Automatic answering system**
  - **Select ring tone**
  - **Phone / Ring tone volume**
  - **Enter mailbox number**
  - **Internal phone settings**
  - **Automatically accept call**
  - **Signal waiting call (?)**
  - **Show status**
  - **Activate waiting call**
  - **Deactivate waiting call**
  - **Call forward (?)**
  - **Show status**
  - **Activate call forward**
  - **Deactivate call forward**
  - **Suppress own number**
  - **Select network**
  - **Set network automatically**
  - **Set network manually**
  - **Search for networks**
  - **PIN settings**
  - **Change PIN**
    - Activate PIN
    - Deactivate PIN
  - **Remember PIN**
  - **SIM-card memory status**

SETUP

"SETUP" Menu

- **Language & Speech**
  - **Menu language**
    - Deutsch
    - English
    - Español
    - Français
    - Italiano
    - Nederlands
    - Polski
    - Portuguese
  - **Voice control**
    - Voice control active
    - Tutorial
      - Basics
      - Examples
      - Tips
    - Speaker adaptation
      - New speaker adaptation
      - Delete speaker adaptation
  - **Voice output volume**
- **Date & Time**
  - **Set date & time**
  - **Date format**
  - **Time format**

- **Display**
  - **Brightness**
  - **Colour**
    - Steel
    - blue light (only in day mode)
    - Orange Ray
    - Blue Flame
  - **Map colour**
    - Day mode for map
    - Night mode for map
    - Auto. Day/Night for map

- **Units**
  - **Temperature**
    - Celsius
    - Fahrenheit
  - **Metric / Imperial**
    - km
    - Miles
- **System**
  - **Factory reset**
  - **Software version**
  - **Automatic scrolling**

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

The table below groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the Peugeot Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D).

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "Linear" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - The audio equipment's CD player does not play DVDs. - Due to inadequate quality, certain recorded CDs will not be played by the audio system.
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.

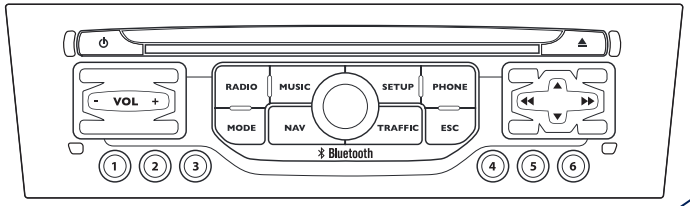
QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press RADIO, select Radio Menu then "Waveband" to return to the waveband on which the stations are stored.
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for any frequency permitting better reception of the station.	Deactivate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.
With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the battery charge. The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
"TA" is selected. However, certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (displaying of the traffic information symbols on the map).
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The time taken to calculate a route sometimes seems longer than usual.	The performance of the system may slow down temporarily if a CD/DVD is being copied onto the Jukebox at the same time as a route is being calculated.	Wait until the CD/DVD has been copied or stop the copying before starting the guidance function.
I receive a speed camera alert for a speed camera which is not on my route.	The system announces all speed cameras positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may detect speed cameras located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to view the exact position of the speed camera.
The speed camera audible warning does not work.	The audible warning is not active.	Activate the audible warning on Navigation Menu, Settings, Set parameters for risk areas.
	The alert volume is set to minimum.	Increase the volume of the alert when passing a speed camera.
Does the emergency call function work without a SIM card?	No, as certain national regulations impose the presence of a SIM card in order to make an emergency call.	Insert a valid SIM card in the slot.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely. Check that there is a GPS coverage of at least 4 satellites (long press on the SETUP button, then select "GPS coverage").
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the conditions of reception of the GPS signal.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The exclusion criteria may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll motorway).	Check the exclusion criteria on the Navigation Menu ("Route options" - "Avoidance criteria").
There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD.	When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take a few seconds.	This phenomenon is normal.
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the equipment may not be visible.	- Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. - Check that your telephone is visible.
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	A list of compatible Bluetooth mobile telephones is available from the dealer network.
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.	Increase the volume of the Peugeot Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D), to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
The system does not play the DVD.	The region protection may not be compatible.	Insert DVDs which have compatible region protection.
I cannot copy the CD to the Jukebox.	The wrong source is selected.	Change the active source to CD.
	The CD is copy-protected.	It is normal that a protected CD cannot be copied.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The system does not receive SMS.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending of the SMS to the system.	Use your SIM card and the internal telephone.
	The SIM card used is a twin card.	Use the original SIM card to receive the SMS.
I cannot update the risk area POIs.	The Navigation Menu - "Update personal POI" is not displayed.	Check that the medium used for the update (SD card or USB memory stick) is inserted correctly.
	An error message is displayed at the end of the procedure.	- Start the procedure again in full. - Consult a PEUGEOT dealer if the problem persists. - Check that the data on the MEDIUM is supplied by an official partner of PEUGEOT.
The voice frequencies (DTMF) are not active when I am communicating and I press numbers on the keypad.	The numeric buttons on the keypad are only active for calls if the display is in telephone mode.	To activate them, press the MODE button until the telephone is displayed on the screen.
An accident area which does not concern me is displayed on the screen.	The accident areas are displayed near a point defined on the map and in relation to a direction of travel.	The alert may be triggered when travelling under a road or near a road which has a speed camera.

400
400
500
400
400
500



PEUGEOT CONNECT NAVIGATION (RT6)

SATELLITE NAVIGATION SYSTEM
MULTIMEDIA BLUETOOTH
TELEPHONE AUDIO SYSTEM

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

For safety reasons, the driver must carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.

When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the system switches off following the activation of the energy economy mode.

CONTENTS

01	First steps - Control panel	p.	292
02	Steering mounted controls	p.	294
03	General operation	p.	295
04	Navigation - Guidance	p.	297
05	Traffic information	p.	310
06	Using the telephone	p.	313
07	Radio	p.	323
08	Music media players	p.	326
09	Audio settings	p.	332
10	Configuration	p.	333
11	Screen menu map	p.	334
	Frequently asked questions	p.	338

Long press: open the "**Audio settings**" menu : music ambience, bass, treble, loudness, left/right balance, front/rear fader, automatic volume adjustment.

Selection and confirmation OK dial:

Selection of an item on the screen or in a list or a menu, then confirmation with a short press.

Other than for menus and lists, a short press displays a contextual menu depending on the current screen.

Rotation with map displayed: zoom the map scale in and out.

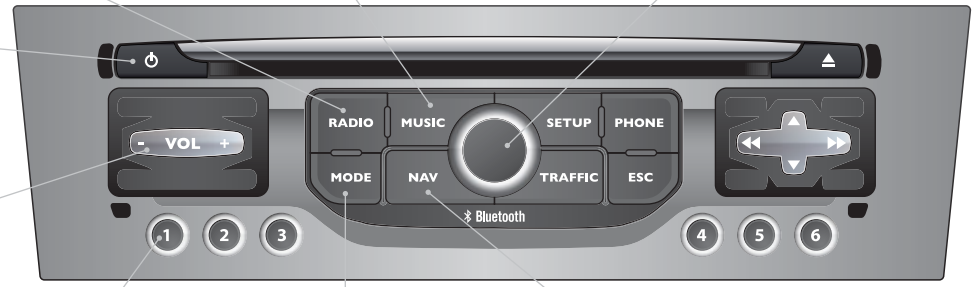
Access to the "**RADIO**" menu and display the list of stations received.

Access to the "**MUSIC**" menu, and display of the CD/MP3/Apple® tracks and folders.

Long press: management of the sorting of MP3/ WMA files/update of the list of stations received.

Short press without the engine running: on / off.

Short press with the engine running: audio source off / restore.



Volume adjustment (each source is independent, including TA messages and navigation instructions).

Short press: select pre-set radio station.

Long press: pre-set the current station.

MODE button: Selection of the type of permanent display.

Long press: black screen (DARK).

Access to the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu and display the recent destinations.

01 FIRST STEPS

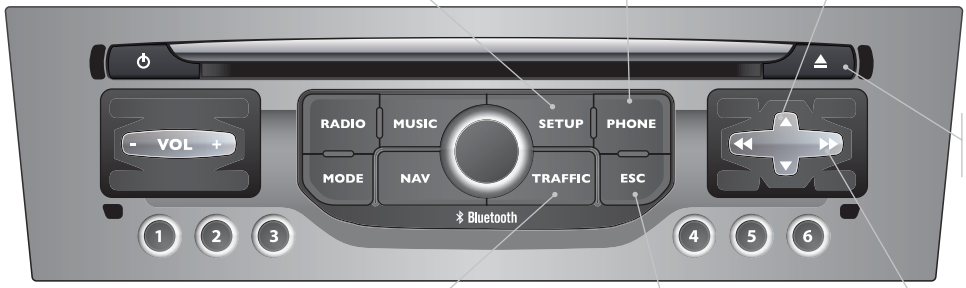
Open the "**Configuration**" menu.

Long press: access to the GPS coverage and the navigation demonstration mode.

Open the "**Telephone**" menu and display the list of recent calls or accept an incoming call.

Select:
- the previous/next line in a list or menu.
- the previous / next media folder.
- step by step selection of the previous/ next radio frequency.
- the previous / next MP3 folder.

Move up/down, in "**Move the map**" mode.



Continuous press: reinitialisation of the system.

Open the "**Traffic information**" menu and display the current traffic alerts.

ESC: abandon the current operation, up one level in the menu.

Long press: return to the permanent display.

Select:
- the next lower / higher radio frequency automatically.
- the previous / next CD track, MP3 track or media.
- the left / right of the screen when a menu is displayed.

Move left / right in "**Move the map**" mode.

02 STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS

RADIO: change to the next radio station in the list.

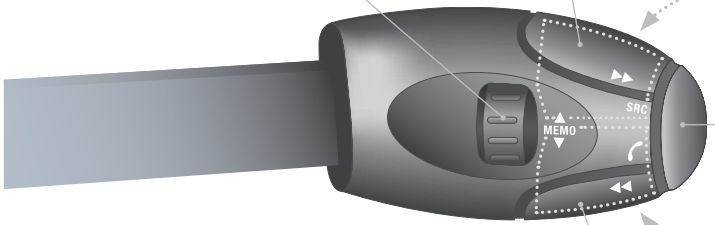
Long press: automatic search for a higher frequency.

CD: select the next track.

CD: continuous press: fast forward play.

RADIO: select the previous/next preset station.

Select the next entry in the address book.



Volume increase.

Change the audio source.

Start a call from the address book.

Call/End call on the telephone.

Press for more than 2 seconds: access to the address book.

Mute: press the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.

Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

Volume decrease.

RADIO: change to the previous radio station in the list.

Long press: automatic search for a lower frequency.

CD: select the previous track.

CD: continuous press: fast reverse.

03 GENERAL OPERATION



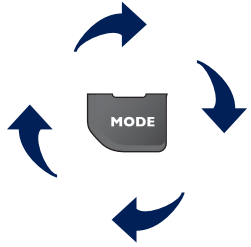
Press the **MODE** button several times in succession for access to the following displays:

"RADIO"



"TELEPHONE"
(If conversation in progress)







"MAP IN WINDOW"
(If navigation guidance in progress)



"FULL SCREEN MAP"



SETUP: PARAMETERS
date and time, display configuration, sound.



Changing the audio source:
RADIO: radio broadcasts.
MUSIC: playing MUSIC.



For cleaning the screen, the use of a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) is recommended, with no additional product.



For a detailed global view of the menus available, refer to the "Screen menu map" section.

03 GENERAL OPERATION

DISPLAY ACCORDING TO CONTEXT



A press on the dial gives access to short-cut menus according to the display in the screen.

RADIO:

1 **Activate / Deactivate TA**

1 **Activate / Deactivate RDS**

1 **Guidance options**

2 **Change waveband**

2 **Activate / Deactivate TA information**

TELEPHONE (call in progress):

1 **Private mode**

1 **Put call on hold**

1 **DTMF ring tones**

1 **Hang up**

MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS, CD or USB (according to media):

Play modes:

1 **Normal**

1 **Random**

1 **Random on all media**

1 **Repetition**

FULL SCREEN MAP OR IN A NEW WINDOW:

1 **Stop / Restore guidance**

1 **Select destination**

2 **Enter an address**

2 **Directory**

2 **GPS coordinates**

1 **Divert route**

1 **Move the map**

2 **Info. on location**

2 **Select as destination**

2 **Select as stage**

2 **Save this place (contacts)**

2 **Quit map mode**

1 **Guidance criteria**

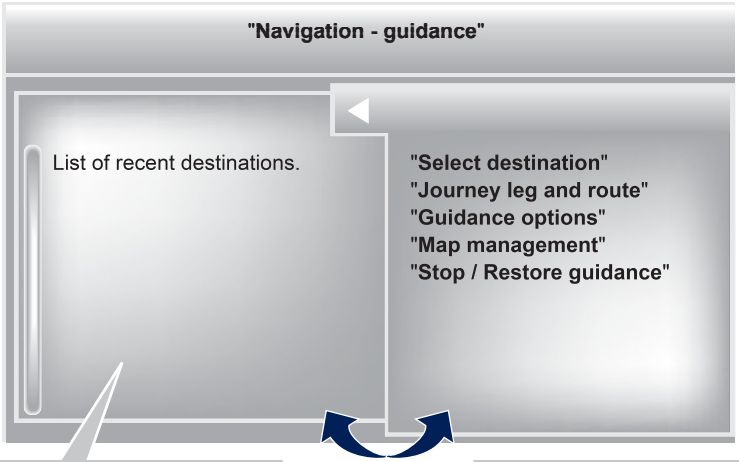
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Access to the "NAVIGATION" menu



Press **NAV**.

A long press on the end of the lighting control stalk repeats the last navigation message.

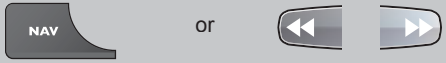


Contact a PEUGEOT dealer for mapping updates.

To delete the list of recent destinations, select "**Guidance options**" in the navigation menu then select "**Delete last destinations**" and confirm. Select "**Yes**" then confirm.

Deleting just one destination is not possible.

Go from the list to the menu (left/right).



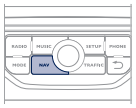
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

SELECTING A DESTINATION

TOWARDS A NEW DESTINATION

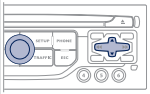
1 

Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



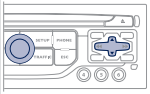
2 

Select "**Select destination**" and confirm, then select "**Enter an address**" and confirm.



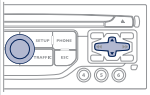
3 

Select the "**Country**" function then confirm.



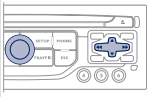
4 

Select "**Town**" function then confirm to enter the destination town.



5 

Select the letters in the name of the town one at a time, confirming each one with the dial.

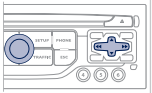


6 Selection the town from the list offered, then confirm

A pre-set list (by entering the first few letters) of the towns in the country selected can be accessed directly by selecting and confirming" **List** " on the screen.

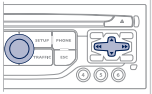
7 

Turn the dial and select "**OK**" then confirm.



8 

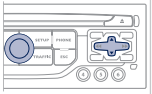
If possible, enter the "**Road**" and "**N°/X**" information in the same way.



Select "**Archive**" to save the address entered in a contact file.
The system allows up to 400 contact files to be recorded.

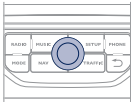
9 

Confirm "**OK**" to start guidance.



10 

Select the guidance criteria: "**Fastest route**", "**Shortest route**" or optimised "**Distance/Time**", then select the desired restriction criteria: "**With tolls**", "**With Ferry**", or "**Traffic info**" then confirm "**OK**".



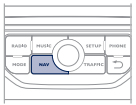
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

SELECTING A DESTINATION

TO ONE OF THE RECENT DESTINATIONS

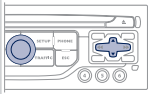
1 

Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



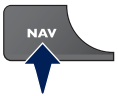
2 

Select the desired destination and confirm to start guidance.

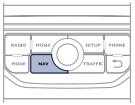


TOWARDS A CONTACT IN THE CONTACTS DIRECTORY

Navigation towards a contact imported from your telephone is only possible if the address is compatible with the system.

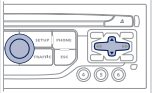
1 

Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



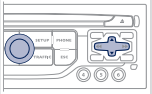
2 

Select "**Select destination**" and confirm, then select "**Directory**" and confirm.



3 

Selection the desired destination from your contacts and confirm "**OK**" to start the guidance.

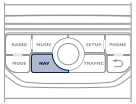


04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

TOWARDS GPS COORDINATES

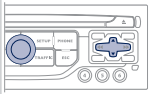
1 

Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



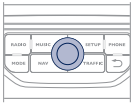
2 

Select "**Select destination**" and confirm, then select "**GPS coordinates**" and confirm.



3 

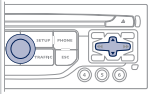
Enter the GPS coordinates and confirm "**OK**" to start the guidance.



TOWARDS A POINT ON THE MAP

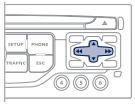
1 

With the map displayed, press **OK** to display the contextual menu. Select "**Move the map**" and confirm.



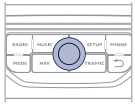
2 

Move the cursor using the control to identify the desired destination.



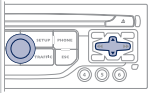
3 

Press **OK** to display the contextual menu for "**Move the map**" mode.



4 

Select "**Select as destination**" or "**Select as stage**" and confirm.



04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

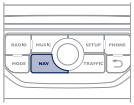
TOWARDS POINTS OF INTEREST (POI)

The points of interest (POI) indicate all of the service locations in the vicinity (hotels, various businesses, airports...).

1



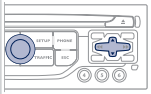
Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2



Select the "**Enter an address**" function and confirm, then select **Select destination** and confirm.



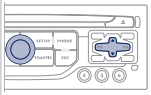
3



To select a POI close to your current location, select "**POI**" and confirm, then select "**Around the current place**" and confirm.

To select a POI as a stage on the route, select "**POI**" and confirm, then select "**On the route**" and confirm.

To select a POI as a destination, first enter the country and town (see "Towards a new destination"), select "**POI**" and confirm, finally select "**Near**" and confirm.



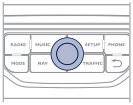


Select "**Search by Name**" to search for POIs by name and not by proximity.

4



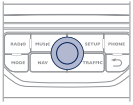
Search for POIs in the categories suggested in the following pages.



5



Select the POI and confirm "**OK**" to start the guidance.



04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

This icon appears when several POIs are grouped together in the same area. Zooming in on this icon shows details of the POIs.



LIST OF PRINCIPAL POINTS OF INTEREST (POI)

- Service station
- Garage
- PEUGEOT
- Motor racing circuit
- Covered car park
- Car park
- Rest area
- Hotel
- Restaurant
- Cafeteria
- Bed and breakfast
- Airport
- Railway station
- Bus station
- Port
- Industrial estate
- Supermarket
- Bank
- Vending machine
- Sports complex, sports centre, sports ground
- Swimming pool
- Winter sports resort
- Entertainment, show
- Cinema
- Theme parks
- Hospital, Chemist, Vet
- Police station
- School
- University
- Town hall
- Post office
- Museum, Culture, Theatre, Historic monument
- Tourist information, Tourist attraction
- Automatic speed camera*
- Red light camera*
- Risk area*

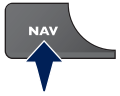
The detailed procedure for updating POIs can be found at wipinforadars.co.uk.

* According to availability in the country.

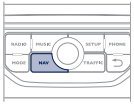
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

ALERT PARAMETERS
RISK AREAS

1



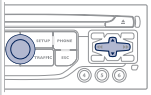
Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2



Select "**Guidance options**" and confirm, then select "**Set parameters for risk areas**" and confirm.



3

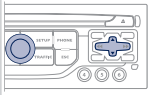


Select:

- "Visual alert"
- "Audible alert"
- "Alert only in guidance"
- "Overspeed alarm only".

The choice of time of notification defines how long in advance that speed camera warnings are given.

Select "**OK**" to confirm the screen.



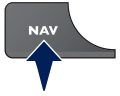
!

These functions are only available if risk areas have been downloaded and installed on the system.

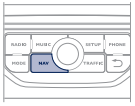
The detailled procedure for updating risk area POIs can be found at www.peugeot.com.

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

ADDING A STAGE

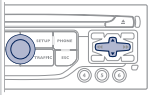
1 

Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2 

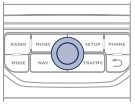
Select "**Journey leg and route**" then confirm.



3 

Select "**Add a stage**" then confirm

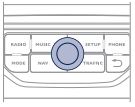
The address of the stage is entered as a destination, by "**Enter an address**", a contact in "**Directory**", or "**Previous destinations**".



4 

Select "**Close to**" a route passing close to the stage or "**Strict**" for a route passing through the stage.

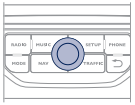
Confirm "**OK**" to start the guidance, and give a general indication of the guidance route.



ORGANISING STAGES

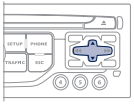
1 

To organise stages, carry out operations 1 to 2 again, then select "**Order/delete journey legs**" and confirm.



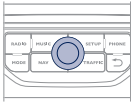
2 

Select the stage that you want to move in the order.



3 

Select and confirm to save the modifications.



Select "**Delete**" to delete the stage.

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

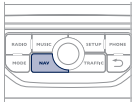
ROUTE OPTIONS

CALCULATION CRITERIA

1



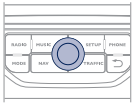
Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2



Select "**Guidance options**" and confirm.



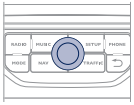
3



Select "**Define calculation criteria**" and confirm.

This function allows modification of:

- the guidance criteria: ("**Fastest route**", "**Shortest route**", "**Distance/Time**"),
- the exclusion criteria: ("**With tolls**" or "**With Ferry**"),
- traffic avoidance: ("**Traffic info**").



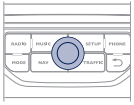
i

If traffic avoidance (Traffic info) is selected, the system suggests an alternative route if there is a delay on the guidance route.

4



Select "**OK**" and confirm to save the modifications.



04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

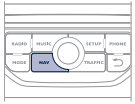
MAP MANAGEMENT

SELECTING THE POINTS OF INTEREST DISPLAYED ON THE MAP

1



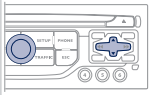
Press **NAV** to display the **"Navigation - guidance"** menu.



2



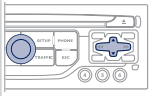
Select **"Map management"** and confirm.



3



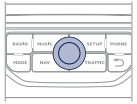
Select **"Map details"** and confirm.



4



Select from the various categories the ones that you want to display on the screen.

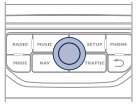


Select **"By default"** to have only **"Oil stations, garages"** and **"Accident-prone area"** appear on the map (if installed in the system).

5



Select **"OK"** then confirm and select **"OK"** again then confirm to save the modifications.



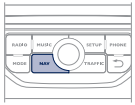
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

MAP ORIENTATION

1



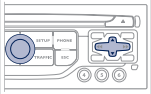
Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2



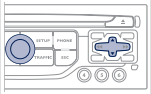
Select "**Map management**" and confirm.



3



Select "**Map orientation**" and confirm.

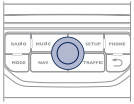


4



Select:

- "**Vehicle direction**" to have the map follow the direction of travel,
- "**North direction**" to keep the map always North up,
- "**Perspective view**" to display a perspective view.



The colour of the map, different from the day and night mode, is configured in the "**SETUP**" menu.

Street names are visible on the map from the 100 m scale.

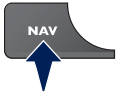
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

ADJUSTING THE GUIDANCE SPEECH SYNTHESIS

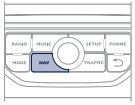
ADJUSTING THE VOLUME/DEACTIVATION

The volume setting of guidance messages is also accessible via the "**SETUP**" / "**Voice synthesis**" menu.

The volume of messages can be adjusted during the transmission of the message using the volume adjustment control.

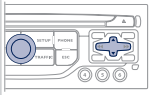
1 

Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



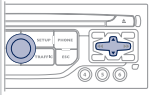
2 

Select "**Guidance options**" and confirm.



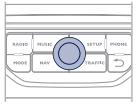
3 

Select "**Set speech synthesis**" and confirm.



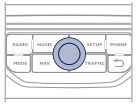
4 

Select the volume graph and confirm.



5 

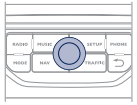
Adjust the volume to the desired level and confirm.



Select "**Deactivate**" to deactivate voice messages.

6 

Select "**OK**" and press the dial to confirm.



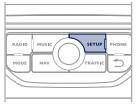
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

MALE VOICE / FEMALE VOICE

1



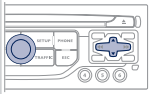
Press **SETUP** to display the configuration menu.



2



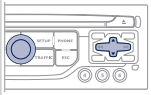
Select "**Voice synthesis**" and confirm.



3

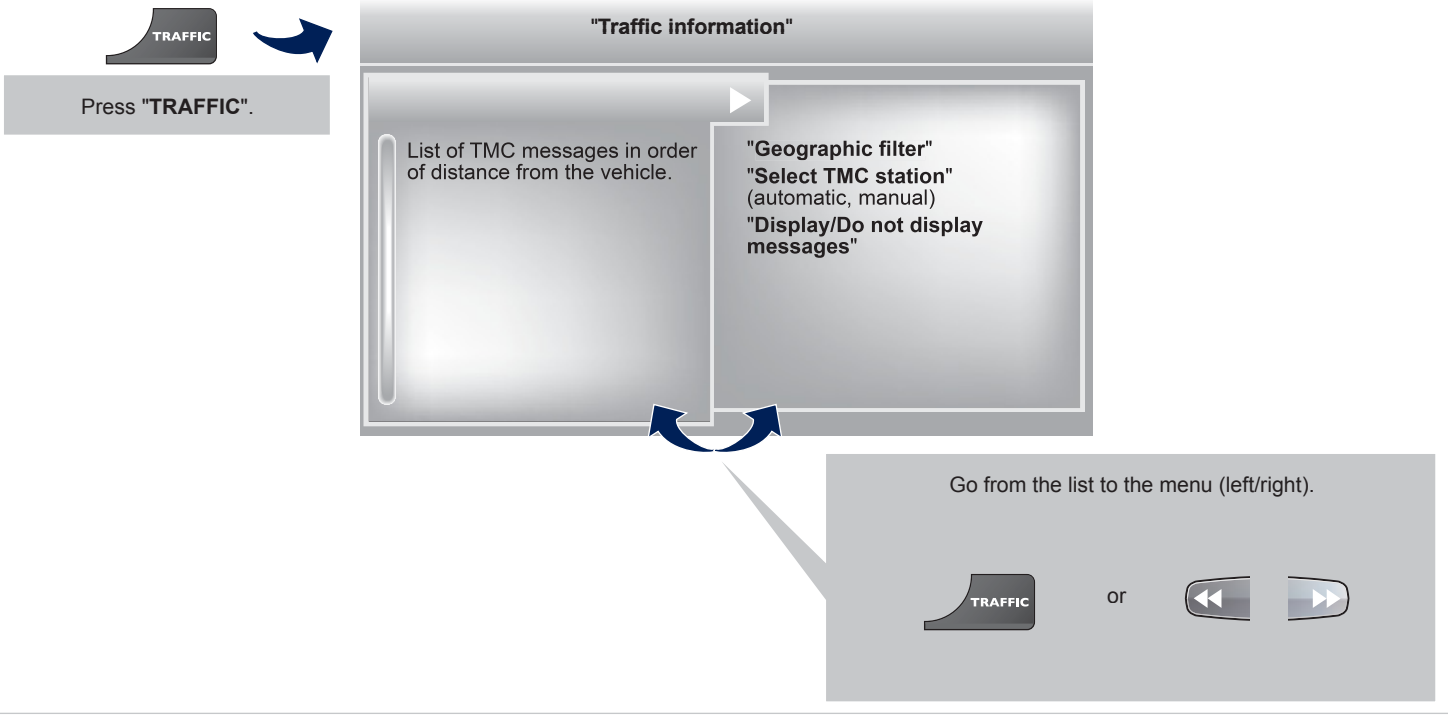


Select "**Select male voice**" or "**Select female voice**" then confirm "**Yes**" to activate a male or female voice. The system restarts.



05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

Access to the "TRAFFIC INFORMATION" menu



05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

CONFIGURE THE FILTERING AND DISPLAY OF TMC MESSAGES

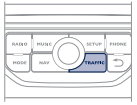
TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages contain information on traffic and weather conditions, received in real time and transmitted to the driver in the form of audible announcements and symbols on the navigation map.

The navigation system can then suggest an alternative route to avoid a traffic problem.

1



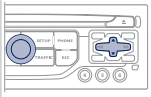
Press the **TRAFFIC** button to display the **Traffic information** menu.



2



Select the "**Geographic filter**" function and confirm.



3

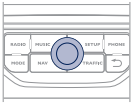


The system offers a choice of:

- "**Retain all the messages**",

or

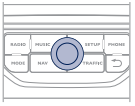
- "**Retain the messages**"
  - "**Around the vehicle**", (confirm the mileage to modify and select the distance),
  - "**On the route**".



4

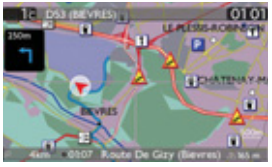


Confirm "**OK**" to save the modifications.



We recommend:

- a filter on the route and
- a filter around the vehicle of:
  - 12 miles (20 km) in urban areas,
  - 30 miles (50 km) on motorways.



05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

PRINCIPAL TMC SYMBOLS

1 Black and blue triangle: general information, for example:

- Weather reports
- Traffic reports
- Wind
- Fog
- Parking
- Snow / ice

2 Red and yellow triangle: traffic information, for example:

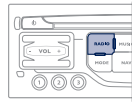
- Modified signage
- Narrow carriageway
- Slippery surface
- Accident
- Delay
- Roadworks
- Risk of explosion
- Road closed
- Demonstration
- Danger
- No entry
- Traffic jam

RECEIVING TA MESSAGES

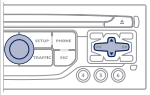
! The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

1 

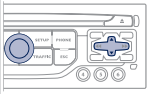
Press **RADIO** to display the **"FM / AM band"** menu.



2 
Select "**Guidance options**" then confirm.



3 
Select "**Activate / Deactivate TA**" then confirm.



! The volume setting for TA messages can be adjusted only during the transmission of this type of alert.

Activate or deactivate the function at any time by pressing the button. During a message, press the button to interrupt it.

06 USING THE TELEPHONE

Access to the "TELEPHONE" menu



Press **PHONE**.

"Telephone"

List of recent calls sent and received with the telephone connected to the system.

"Dial"
"Directory of contacts"
"Telephone options"
"Bluetooth functions"
"Hang up"
(call in progress)

In the top bar of the permanent display

- No telephone connected.
- Telephone connected.
- Incoming call.
- Outgoing call.
- Synchronisation of address book in progress.
- Telephone call in progress.

To make a call, select a number in the list and confirm **"OK"** to start the call.

Connecting a different telephone deletes the list of recent calls.

Go from the list to the menu (left/right).



or



06 USING THE TELEPHONE

PAIRING A BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE FIRST CONNECTION

! For reasons of safety and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the audio unit must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary**.

Visit www.peugeot.co.uk for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).

1



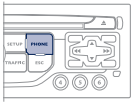
Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "shown to all" (telephone configuration).



2



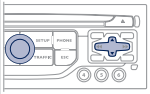
Press this button.



3



Select "**Bluetooth functions**" and confirm.

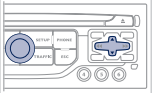


4



Select "**Peripherals search**" and confirm.

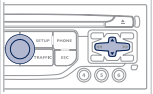
The list of peripherals detected is displayed. Wait until the "**Connect**" button is available.



5



Select the name of the desired peripheral from the list of devices detected then select "**Connect**" and confirm.



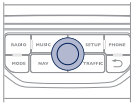
6



The system offers to connect the telephone:

- in "**Hands-free mode**" (telephone only),
- in "**Audio**" mode (streaming: playing music files on the telephone),
- or "**All**" (for selection of both modes).

Select "**OK**" and confirm.



06 USING THE TELEPHONE

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used. Check the telephone manual and with your network provider for details of the services available to you.

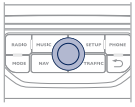
The "**Hands-free mode**" should be used in preference if "Streaming" is not desired.

The ability of the system to connect in only one mode depends on the telephone. The two modes may both connect by default.

7



Select a code for the connection then confirm "**OK**".



8

Enter the same code on the telephone then accept the connection.



Then accept automatic connection on the telephone to allow the telephone to reconnect automatically every time the vehicle is started.

Depending on the type of telephone, the system will ask you to accept or not the transfer of your contacts.

On return to the vehicle,the last telephone connected automatically reconnects, within around 30 seconds after switching on the ignition (Bluetooth activated and visible).

To modify the automatic connection mode, remove the pairing and pair the telephone again with the desired mode.

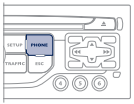
06 USING THE TELEPHONE

DIRECTORY / SYNCHRONIZING CONTACTS

1



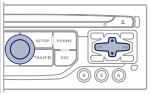
Press **PHONE** then select "**Contacts management**" and confirm.



2a



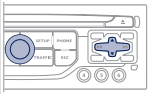
Select "**New contact**" to enter a new contact.



2b



Select "**Delete all contacts**" to delete the contacts saved in the system.

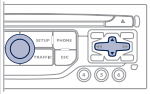


2c



Select "**Import all the entries**" to import all the contacts in the telephone and save them in the system.

Once imported, a contact remains visible whatever telephone is connected.

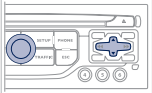


2d



Selection "**Synchronization options**":

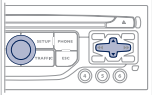
- No synchronization: only the contacts saved in the system (always present).
- Display telephone contacts: only the contacts saved in the telephone.
- Display SIM card contacts: only the contacts saved on the SIM card.
- Display all phone contacts: contacts on the SIM card and in the telephone.



2e



Select "**Contact mem. status**" to see the number of contacts saved in the system or imported, and the free memory.

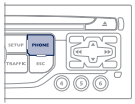


06 USING THE TELEPHONE

MANAGING CONTACTS

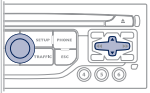
1 

Press **PHONE** then select "**Directory of contacts**" and confirm.



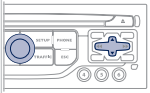
2 

Select the desired contact and confirm.



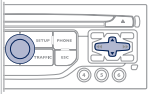
3 

Select "**Call**" to start the call.



4 

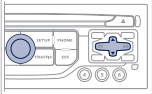
Select "**Open**" to view an external contact or modify a contact saved in the system.



i It is necessary to import an external contact to modify the record. It will be saved in the system. It is not possible to modify or delete contacts in the telephone or the SIM card via the Bluetooth connection.

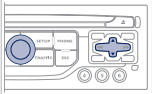
5 

Select "**Import**" to copy one contact to the system.



6 

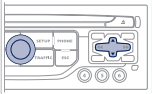
Select "**Delete**" to delete a contact saved in the system.

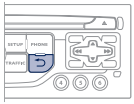


7 

Select **OK** or **ESC** to exit this menu.







06 USING THE TELEPHONE

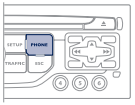
MAKING A CALL

Use of the telephone is not recommended while driving. We recommended that you park safely or make use of the steering mounted controls.

CALLING A NEW NUMBER

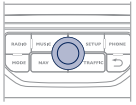
1 

Press **PHONE** twice.



2 

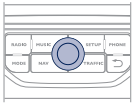
Select "**Dial**" then confirm.



3 

Dial the telephone number using the virtual keypad selecting each number in turn.

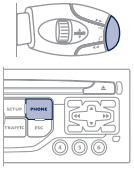
Confirm "**OK**" to make the call.



CALLING A CONTACT

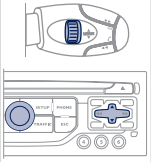
1 

Press **TEL** or twice on **PHONE**.



2 

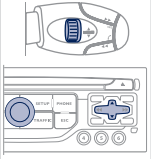
Select "**Directory of contacts**" then confirm.



3 

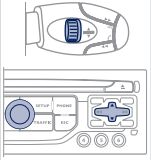
Select the desired contact and confirm.

If access was via the **PHONE** button, select "**Call**" and confirm.



4 

Select the number and confirm to start the call.



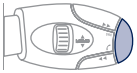
06 USING THE TELEPHONE

CALLING A RECENTLY ENTERED NUMBER

1



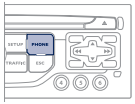
Press **TEL**, select "**Call list**" and confirm,



or



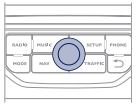
press **PHONE** to display the calls log.



2



Select the desired number and confirm.



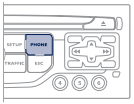
To erase the calls log, press **PHONE** twice, select "**Phone functions**" and confirm then select "**Delete calls log**" and confirm.

ENDING A CALL

1

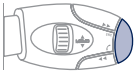


Press **PHONE** then select "**OK**" to end the call.





Or make a long press on **TEL** at the steering mounted controls.



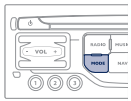


Or make two short presses on **TEL** at the steering mounted controls.



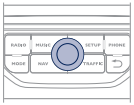


Or press the **MODE** button, as many times as necessary, until the telephone screen is displayed.





Press "**OK**" to display the contextual menu then select "**Hang up**" and confirm.



06 USING THE TELEPHONE

RECEIVING A CALL

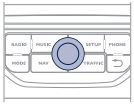
1

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display on the screen.

2

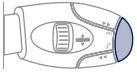


"Yes" to accept the call is selected by default.
Press **"OK"** to accept the call.
Select **"No"** and confirm to reject the call.





A short press on **TEL** accepts an incoming call.
A long press on **TEL** rejects an incoming call.



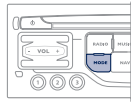
06 USING THE TELEPHONE

OPTIONS DURING A CALL*

1

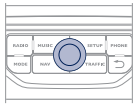


During a call, press the **MODE** button several times to select display of the telephone screen, then press "**OK**" to open the contextual menu.





Or make a short press on this button.

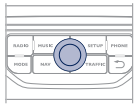


2a



Select "**Private mode**" and confirm to take the call on the handset.

Or select "**Hands-free mode**" and confirm to take the call via the vehicle's speakers.

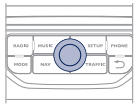


2b



Select "**Put call on hold**" and confirm to put the current call on hold.

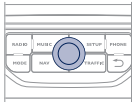
Or select "**Resume the call**" and confirm to resume the call on hold.



2c



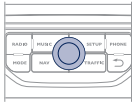
Select "**DTMF ring tones**" to use the numerical keypad, so as to navigate through the menu of an interactive vocal server.



2d

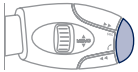


Select "**Hang up**" to end the call.





it is possible to hold a 3-way conference call by making 2 calls in succession*. Select "**Conference mode call**" in the contextual menu accessible using this button.



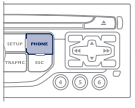
* Depending on the compatibility of the phone and your service plan.

06 USING THE TELEPHONE

MANAGING PAIRED TELEPHONES

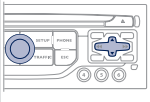
1 

Press **PHONE** twice.



2 

Select "**Bluetooth functions**".



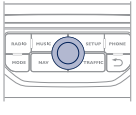
3 

Select "**List of the paired peripherals**" and confirm.

It is possible to:

- "**Connect**" or "**Disconnect**" the selected telephone,
- delete the pairing of the selected telephone.

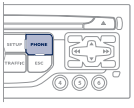
It is also possible to select all pairings.



CHANGING THE RING TONE

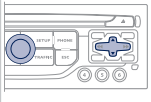
1 

Press **PHONE** twice.



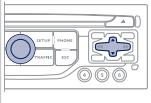
2 

Select "**Phone functions**" and confirm.



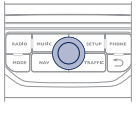
3 

Select "**Ring options**" and confirm.



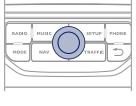
4 

You can adjust the volume and the type of ring tone.



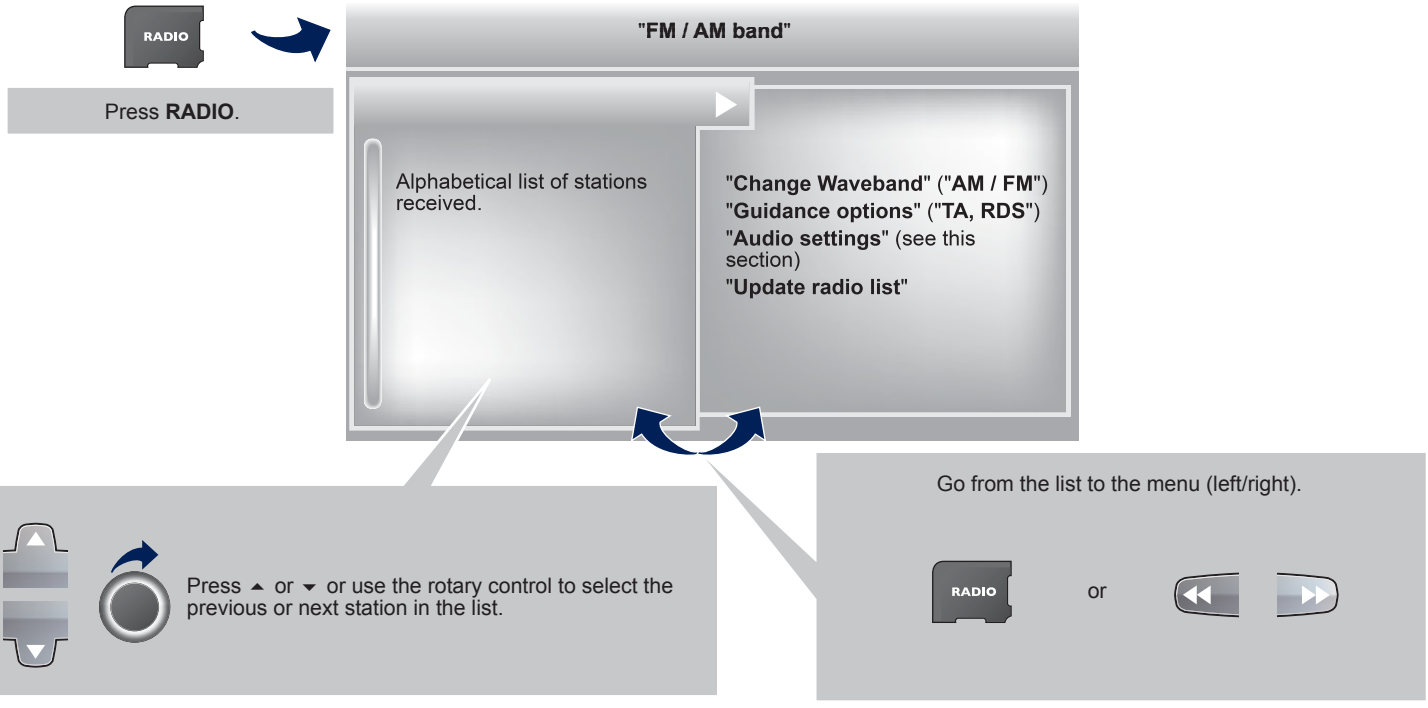
5 

Select "**OK**" and confirm to save the changes.



07 RADIO

Access to the "RADIO" menu



07 RADIO

SELECTING A STATION

The external environment (hill, building, tunnel, underground car park...) may interfere with the reception, including in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is a normal result of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not in any way indicate a fault with the audio system.



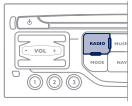
The quality of reception is represented by the number of active waves in this symbol.

1a



By alphabetical list

Press **RADIO** or **LIST**, select the station of your choice and confirm.



1b

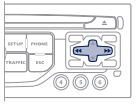


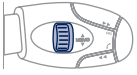
By automatic frequency search

Press ◀◀ or ▶▶ for the automatic search for a lower or higher radio frequency.

Or turn the thumb wheel at the steering mounted controls.





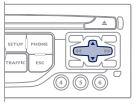


1c



By manual frequency search

Press ▲ or ▼ to adjust the radio frequency step by step.



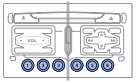
PRESETTING A STATION

1



After selecting a station, press one of the buttons on the numerical keypad for 2 seconds to preset the current station.

An audible signal confirms that the station has been preset.





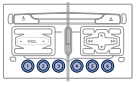
2

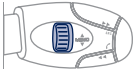


Press the button on the numerical keypad to recall a preset station.

Or press then turn the thumb wheel at the steering mounted controls.







07 RADIO

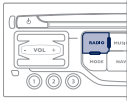
ACTIVATE / DEACTIVATE RDS

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

1



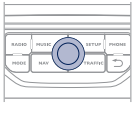
Press **RADIO**.



2



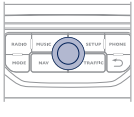
Select "**Guidance options**" and confirm.



3



Select "**Activate / Deactivate RDS**" and confirm.



Radio displayed, press "**OK**" to display the contextual menu.

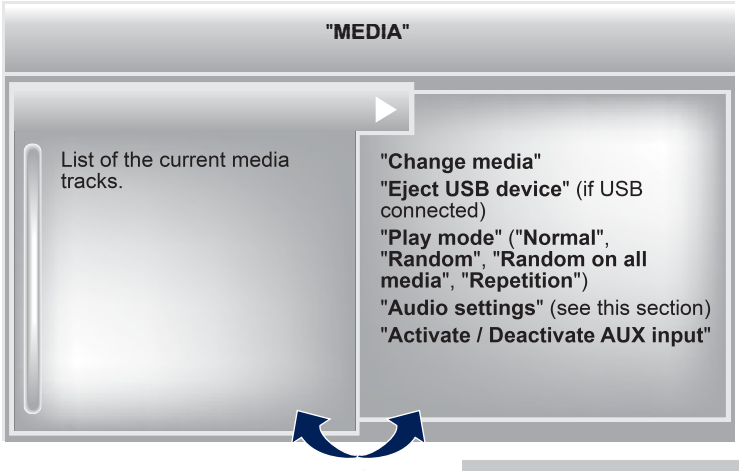
Select "**Activate / Deactivate RDS**".

08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

Access to the "MUSIC MEDIA PLAYER" menu



Press **MUSIC**.



Go from the list to the menu (left/right).



or



08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

CD, MP3 CD / USB PLAYER

INFORMATION AND ADVICE

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma, .aac, .flac, .ogg and. mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.

No other type of file (.mp4, .m3u...) can be played.

WMA files must be of the standard wma 9 type.

The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g.: " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select the ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet standard.

If the disc is recorded in another format it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

The system supports USB mass storage or iPod devices via the USB port (suitable cable not supplied).

Control of the peripheral device is with the audio system controls.

Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied).



In order to be read, a USB memory stick must be formatted FAT 16 or 32.

08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

SOURCES

Insert the CD in the player, insert the USB memory stick in the USB player or connect the USB peripheral to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied)



The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.

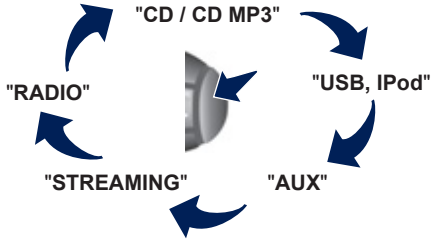


The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or connection of a USB memory stick. However, the system memorises these lists and if they are not modified, the loading time will be shorter.

Play starts automatically after a period which depends on the capacity of the USB memory stick.

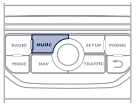
SELECTION OF SOURCE

The **SOURCE** button on the steering mounted controls allows a direct change to the next media source.



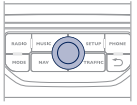
1 

Press **MUSIC** to display the **"MEDIA"** menu.



2 

Select "**Following media source**" and confirm.



Repeat the operation as many times as necessary to obtain the desired media source (except for radio which is accessible either with **SOURCE** or **RADIO**).

08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

SELECTING A TRACK

Previous track.	
Next track.	
Previous folder.	
Next folder.	
Fast forward.	Long press 
Fast backward.	Long press 
Pause: long press on **SRC**.	

MUSIC: List of USB or CD tracks or folders	
Up or down in the list.	
Confirm, next menu level.	
Up one menu level.	 

08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

CONNECTING APPLE® PLAYERS

1

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

Play starts automatically.

2

Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts).

The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

The list of devices compatible with software versions is available from PEUGEOT dealers.

AUDIO STREAMING

Streaming allows audio files on your telephone to be played via the vehicle's speakers.

1

Connect the telephone: see "USING THE TELEPHONE".

Select "**Audio**" or "**All**" profile.

2

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.

Control is from the peripheral device or by using the audio system buttons.

Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.

It is recommended that you activate "**Repeat**" on the Bluetooth peripheral.

08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

USING THE AUXILIARY INPUT (AUX) JACK/RCA AUDIO CABLE NOT SUPPLIED

1

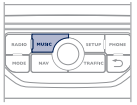
Connect the portable device (MP3, WMA player…) to the RCA audio sockets (white and red) using a JACK-RCA audio cable.



2



Press **MUSIC** to display the "**MUSIC**" menu.

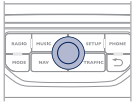


3



Select "**Activate / Deactivate AUX input**" and confirm.

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.



!

Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

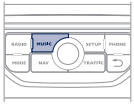
09 AUDIO SETTINGS

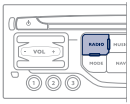
1





They are accessible by the **MUSIC** button in the control panel or by a long press on **RADIO** according to the source in use.





2

- "**Equalizer**" (choice of 6 musical ambiences)
- "**Bass**"
- "**Treble**"
- "**Loudness**" (Activate/Deactivate)
- "**Distribution**" ("**Driver**", "**All passengers**")
- "**Le-Ri balance**" (Left/Right)
- "**Fr-Re balance**" (Front/Rear)
- "**Auto. Volume**" depending on road speed (Activate/Deactivate)

!

The distribution (or spatialisation using the Arkamys© system) of sound is an audio process that allows the audio quality to be adapted to the number of listeners in the vehicle.

!

The audio settings (**Equalizer**, **Bass**, **Treble** and **Loudness**) are different and independent for each sound source.

The settings for distribution and balance are common to all sources.

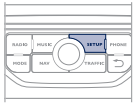
10 CONFIGURATION

DISPLAY CONFIGURATION

1



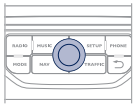
Press **SETUP** to display the "**Configuration**" menu.



2



Select "**Display configuration**" and confirm.

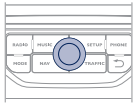


3a



Select "**Choose colour**" and confirm to select the screen colour harmony and the map presentation mode:

- day mode,
- night mode,
- automatic day/night mode, according to whether the headlamps are on.



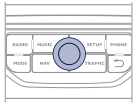
3b



Select "**Adjust luminosity**" and confirm to adjust the screen brightness.

Press "**OK**" to save the changes.

The settings for day and night are independent.



11 SCREEN MENU MAP

MAIN FUNCTION

- 1 OPTION A
  - 2 option A1
  - 2 option A2
    - 3
- 1 OPTION B...

"Navigation - guidance" MENU

1 Select destination

- 2 Enter an address
- 2 Directory
- 2 GPS coordinates (Archive)

1 Journey leg and route

- 2 Add a stage
  - 3 Enter an address
  - 3 Directory
- 3 Previous destinations
- 2 Order/delete journey legs
- 2 Divert route
- 2 Chosen destination

1 Guidance options

- 2 Define calculation criteria
- 2 Set speech synthesis
- 2 Delete last destinations
- 2 Set parameters for risk areas

1 Map management

- 2 Map orientation
- 2 Map details
- 2 Move the map / "Vehicle monitoring"
- 2 Mapping and updating
- 2 Description of risk areas database

1 Stop / Restore guidance

"TRAFFIC" MENU

1 Geographic filter

- 2 Retain all the messages:
- 2 Retain the messages:
  - 3 Around the vehicle
  - 3 On the route

1 Select TMC station

- 2 Automatic TMC
- 2 Manual TMC
- 2 List of TMC stations

1 Display / Do not display messages

11 SCREEN MENU MAP

Phone MENU

- 1 **Dial**
- 1 **Directory of contacts**
  - 2 Call
  - 2 Open
  - 2 Import
  - 2 Delete
- 1 **Contacts management**
  - 2 New contact
  - 2 Delete all contacts
  - 2 Import all the entries
  - 2 Synchronizing contacts
    - 3 No synchronization
    - 3 Display telephone contacts
    - 3 Display SIM card contacts
    - 3 Display all phone contacts
  - 2 Contact mem. status
- 1 **Phone functions**
  - 2 Ring options
  - 2 Delete calls log
- 1 **Bluetooth functions**
  - 2 List of the paired peripherals
    - 3 Connect
    - 3 Disconnect
    - 3 Delete
    - 3 Delete all
  - 2 Peripherals search
  - 2 Rename radiotelephone
- 1 **Hang up**

"RADIO" MENU

- 1 **Change Waveband**
- 1 **Guidance options**
  - 2 Activate / Deactivate TA
  - 2 Activate / Deactivate RDS
- 1 **Audio settings**
  - 2 Equalizer
    - 3 None
    - 3 Classical
    - 3 Jazz
    - 3 Rock
    - 3 Techno
    - 3 Vocal

11 SCREEN MENU MAP

- 2 Bass
- 2 Treble
- 2 Loudness
- 2 Distribution
  - 3 Driver
  - 3 All passengers
- 2 Le-Ri balance
- 2 Fr-Re balance
- 2 Auto. Volume

1 **Update radio list**

"MUSIC" MENU

1 **Change Media**

1 **Eject USB support**

1 **Read mode**

- 2 Normal
- 2 Random
- 2 Random on all media
- 2 Repetition

1 **Audio settings (same as RADIO)**

1 **Activate / Deactivate AUX input**

"SETUP" MENU

1 **Display configuration**

- 2 Choose colour
  - 3 Harmony
  - 3 Cartography
    - 4 Day mode
    - 4 Night mode
    - 4 Auto Day/Night
- 2 Adjust luminosity
- 2 Set date and time
- 2 Select units

1 **Speech synthesis setting**

- 2 Guidance instructions volume
- 2 Select male voice / Select female voice

11 SCREEN MENU MAP

- 1 **Select language**
- 1 **Define vehicle parameters***
  - 2 **Parking assistance**
  - 2 **Operation of wipers**
    - 3 **Engage rear wiper in REVERSE**
  - 2 **Lighting configuration**
    - 3 **Duration of guide-me home lighting**
    - 3 **Directional headlamps**
    - 3 **Mood lighting**
    - 3 **Daytime running lamps**

* The parameters vary according to the vehicle.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

The following table groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The guidance criteria may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll motorway).	Check the guidance criteria on the Navigation Menu, "Guidance options"\ "Define calculation criteria".
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
	The POIs have not been downloaded.	Download the POIs from the website: "wipinforadars.co.uk".
The speed camera audible warning does not work.	The audible warning is not active.	Activate audible warnings in the Guidance options menu, "Navigation - guidance", "Set parameters for risk areas".
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select the "Traffic info" function in the list of guidance criteria.
I receive a speed camera alert for a speed camera which is not on my route.	Other than guidance, the system announces all speed cameras positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for speed cameras located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to view the exact position of the speed camera. Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than guidance or to reduce the time for the announcement.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	The filters are too restrictive.	Modify the "Geographic filter" settings.
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely. Check that there is a GPS coverage of at least 4 satellites (long press on the SETUP button, then select "GPS coverage").
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	- Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. - Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	A list of compatible Bluetooth mobile telephones is available from the dealer network.
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	The ambient noise level has an influence on the quality of telephone communication.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, ...).

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronizing contacts are synchronizing the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronizations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
Contacts are not shown in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the display setting in the telephone directory.
The system does not receive SMS text messages.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play. Le CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio system.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - The audio system's CD player does not play DVDs. - Some recorded CDs will not be played by the audio system because they are not of the correct quality.
There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This phenomenon is normal.
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Some characters in the media information are not displayed correctly while playing.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playing of streaming files does not start.	The peripheral device connected does not support automatic play.	Start the playback from the device.
The names of tracks and the track length are not displayed on the screen when streaming audio.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault with the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.	The station is not received or its name has changed in the list.	
	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example).	
The name of the radio station changes.	The system interprets this information as the name of the station.	

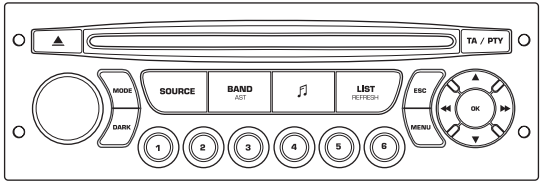
FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
In changing the equalizer setting, treble and bass return to zero.		
When changing the balance settings, the distribution setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance or distribution settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing an distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.		
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings for Volume, Bass, Treble, Equalizer and Loudness can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).	Check that the audio settings for (Volume, Bass, Treble, Equalizer, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Fr-Re balance, Le-Ri balance) to the middle position, select the "None", musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the battery charge. The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
When I connect my iPhone as telephone and to the USB port at the same time, I am unable to play the music files.	When the iPhone connects automatically as a telephone, it forces the streaming function. The streaming function takes the place of the USB function which is then not useable, there is a period without sound of the track being played with Apple® players.	Disconnect and reconnect to the USB port (the USB function takes priority over streaming).

400
400
500
400
400
500



PEUGEOT CONNECT SOUND (RD5)

AUDIO SYSTEM / BLUETOOTH®

Your Peugeot Connect Sound (RD5) is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

For safety reasons, the driver must carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.

When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the audio equipment may switch off after a few minutes.

CONTENTS

01 First steps	p.	346
02 Steering mounted controls	p.	347
03 Main menu	p.	348
04 Audio	p.	349
05 Peugeot Connect USB	p.	352
06 Bluetooth	p.	355
07 Screen menu map	p.	358
Frequently asked questions	p.	363

01 FIRST STEPS

Select source:
radio, audio CD / MP3 CD, USB, Jack connection, Streaming, AUX.

Select wavebands FM1, FM2, FMast and AM.

Audio settings: front/ rear fader, left/right balance, bass/treble, loudness, audio ambiences.

Display the list of local stations.
Long press: CD tracks or MP3 folders (CD / USB).

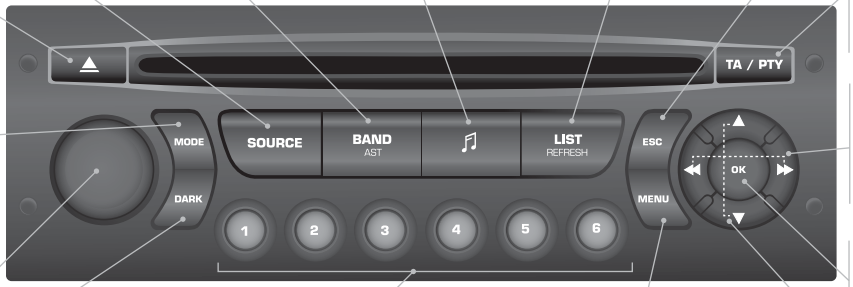
Abandon the current operation.

TA (Traffic Announcements) on/off.
Long press: PTY* (radio Programme TYpe) mode.

Eject CD.

Select the screen display mode:
Date, audio functions, trip computer, telephone.

On/off, volume setting.



Automatic frequency search down/up.
Select previous/next CD, MP3 or USB track.

Confirm.

The DARK button changes the screen display for improved driving comfort at night.
1st press: upper bar only illuminated.
2nd press: black screen.
3rd press: return to standard display.

Buttons 1 to 6:
Select a pre-set radio station.
Long press: pre-set a station.

Display main menu.

Select next frequency down/up.
Select previous/next MP3 folder.
Select previous/next folder / genre / artist / playlist (USB).

* Available according to version.

02 STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS

Radio: select the previous/next pre-set station.

USB: select genre / artist / folder from the classification list.

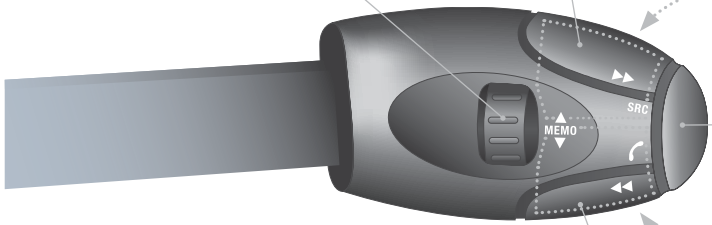
Select the previous/next item in a menu.

Radio: automatic search for a higher frequency.

CD / MP3 / USB: selection of the next track.

CD / USB: continuous press: fast forwards play.

Move in the list.



Volume increase.

Change audio source.

Confirm a selection.

Call/end call on the telephone.

Press for more than 2 seconds: telephone main menu.

Volume decrease.

Mute: press the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.

The sound is restored by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

Radio: automatic search for a lower frequency.

CD / MP3 / USB: selection of the previous track.

CD / USB: continuous press: fast reverse.

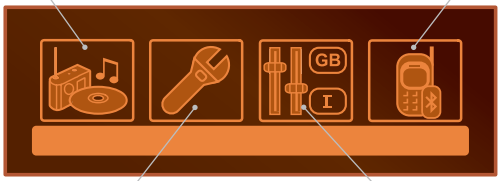
Move in the list.

03 MAIN MENU

AUDIO FUNCTIONS:
radio, CD, USB, options.

TELEPHONE:
hands-free kit, pairing, management of a call.

> MONOCHROME SCREEN C



VEHICLE DIAGNOSTICS:
alerts log.

PERSONALISATION-CONFIGURATION:
vehicle parameters, display, languages.

> MONOCHROME SCREEN A



For a detailed global view of the menus available, refer to the "Screen menu map" section of this chapter.

04 AUDIO

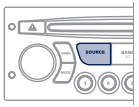
The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, ...) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio system.

RADIO

SELECTING A STATION

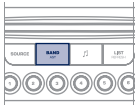
1 

Press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select the radio.



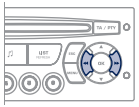
2 

Press the BAND AST button to select a waveband: FM1, FM2, FMast, AM.



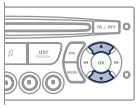
3 

Briefly press one of the buttons to carry out an automatic search of the radio stations.



4 

Press one of the buttons to carry out a manual search up / down for radio frequencies.

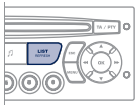






Press the LIST REFRESH button to display the list of stations received locally (30 stations maximum).

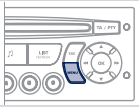
To update this list, press for more than two seconds.



RDS

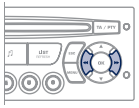
1 

Press the MENU button.



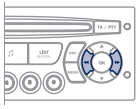
2 

Select AUDIO FUNCTIONS then press OK.



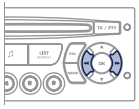
3 

Select the FM WAVEBAND PREFERENCES function then press OK.



4 

Select ACTIVATE RDS then press OK. RDS appears on the screen.





In radio mode, press OK directly to activate / deactivate RDS mode.

!

The RDS, if displayed, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. Under conditions of very weak reception, the system may change to a regional station.

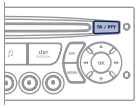
04 AUDIO

RECEIVING TA MESSAGES

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

1 

Press the TA button to activate or deactivate traffic messages.



CD
PLAYING A CD

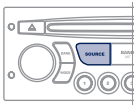
Insert circular compact discs only.

Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the original player.

Without pressing the EJECT button, insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

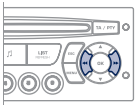
1 

To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select CD.



2 

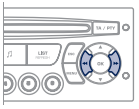
Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.



Press the LIST REFRESH button to display the list of tracks on the CD.

3 

Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward.



MP3 CD
PLAYING AN MP3 COMPILATION

Insert an MP3 compilation in the player.

The audio equipment searches for all of the music tracks, which may take anything between a few seconds and several tens of seconds, before play begins.

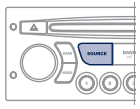
On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 folder levels. However, it is advisable to keep to a limit of two levels to reduce the access time before the CD is played.

While the CD is being played, the folder structure is not followed.

All of the files are displayed on a single level.

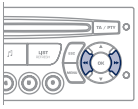
1 

To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select CD.



2 

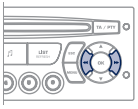
Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.



Press the LIST REFRESH button to display the list of directories of the MP3 compilation.

3 

Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward play.



MP3 CD
INFORMATION AND ADVICE

The MP3 format, an abbreviation of MPEG 1.2 & 2.5 Audio Layer 3, is an audio compression standard which permits the recording of several tens of music files on a single disc.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording, the ISO 9660 level 1.2 or Joliet file format is recommended.

If the disc is recorded in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same recording format is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet format is recommended.

The audio system will only play files with the extension ".mp3" with a sampling rate of 22.05 KHz or 44.1 KHz. No other type of file (.wma, .mp4, .m3u...) can be played.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters without using special characters (e.g. " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing or displaying problems.

Empty CDs are not recognised and may damage the system.

05 USB PLAYER

USING THE PEUGEOT CONNECT USB

The list of compatible equipment and the compression rates supported are available from PEUGEOT dealers.

1

This unit consists of a USB port and an auxiliary Jack socket*. The audio files are transmitted from a portable device - digital player or a USB memory stick - to your Peugeot Connect Sound (RD5) and heard via the vehicle's speakers.



2

USB memory stick (1.1, 1.2 and 2.0) or Apple® player of generation 5 or later:

- USB memory sticks should be formatted FAT or FAT 32 (NTFS not supported),
- the Apple® player lead is essential,
- navigation through the file database is also possible by means of the steering mounted controls.



3

Other Apple® players of earlier generations and players using the MTP protocol*:

- play via Jack-Jack lead only (not supplied),
- navigation through the file database is from the portable device.



CONNECTING A USB MEMORY STICK

1



Connect the memory stick to the port, directly or using a lead. If the audio equipment is switched on, the USB source is detected as soon as it is connected. Play begins automatically after a delay which depends on the capacity of the USB memory stick.

The file formats supported are .mp3 (mpeg1 layer 3 only), .wma (standard 9 only, 128 kbits/sec compression), .wav and .ogg.

Certain playlist formats are supported (.m3u, ...).

On reconnection of the previous memory stick used, play is resumed automatically with the last track played.

!

The system puts together playlists (temporary memory) created over a period which depends on the capacity of the USB device.

The other sources are available during this time.

The playlists are updated each time the ignition is switched off or each time a USB memory stick is connected.

When connecting for the first time, the classification suggested is by folder. When you reconnect, the classification selected previously is retained.

* According to vehicle.

05 USB PLAYER

USING THE PEUGEOT CONNECT USB

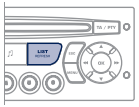
2

Press and hold LIST to display the different classifications.

Select by Folder / Artist / Genre / Playlist, press OK to select the classification required, then press OK again to confirm.



- by Folder: all folders containing audio files recognised on the peripheral device.
- by Artist: all of the artist names defined in the ID3 Tags, classified in alphabetical order.
- by Genre: all of the genres defined in the ID3 Tags.
- by Playlist: in accordance with the playlists recorded on the USB device.



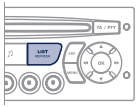




Press LIST briefly to display the previously selected classification.

Navigate through the list using the left/ right and up/down buttons.

Confirm the selection by pressing OK.

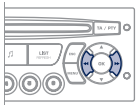


3



Press one of these buttons to gain access to the previous / next track on the classification list currently being played.

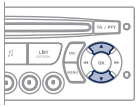
Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward play.



4



Press one of these buttons to gain access to the previous / next Genre, Folder, Artist or Playlist on the classification list currently being played.



CONNECTING AN APPLE® PLAYER VIA THE USB PORT

1

The lists available are Artist, Genre and Playlist (as defined in the Apple® player).

Selection and Navigation are described in steps 1 to 4 above.

!

Do not connect a hard disk or USB connection device other than audio equipment to the USB port. This could damage your installation.

05 USB PLAYER

USING THE AUXILIARY SOCKET (AUX)

RCA SOCKET

The RCA auxiliary socket permits the connection of a portable device (MP3 player...).

1

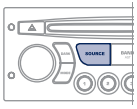
Connect the portable device (MP3 player…) to the audio sockets (white and red, RCA type) using a suitable cable (not supplied).



2



Press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select AUX.



ADJUSTING THE VOLUME OF THE AUXILIARY SOURCE

1

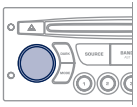
First adjust the volume of your portable device.



2



Then adjust the volume of your audio system.



The display and control is via the portable device.



06 BLUETOOTH

BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE

SCREEN C
(Available according to model and version)

The services offered depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth equipment used.

Consult your telephone's manual and your operator to find out which services are available to you.

PAIRING A TELEPHONE / FIRST CONNECTION

! For safety reasons and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio equipment must be carried out with the vehicle stationary and the ignition on.

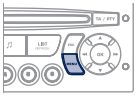
Go to www.peugeot.co.uk for more information (compatibility, more help, ...).

1 Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).



2 

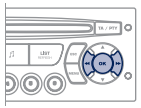
Press the MENU button.



3 

In the menu, select:

- Bluetooth telephone function - Audio
- Bluetooth configuration
- Perform a Bluetooth search



4 A window is displayed with a message that a search is in progress.

5 The first 4 telephones recognised are displayed in this window.

! The TELEPHONE menu permits access to the following functions in particular: Directory*, Call list, Pairing management.

* If your telephone is fully compatible.

6 Select the telephone to be connected from the list. Only one telephone can be connected at a time.

7 A virtual keypad is displayed in the screen: enter a code with at least 4 digits.

Confirm by pressing OK.



8 A message is displayed in the screen of the telephone chosen. To accept the pairing, enter the same code on the telephone, then confirm with OK.

If pairing fails, the number of attempts is not limited.



9 A message that the pairing has been successful appears in the screen.

i The automatic connection authorised is only active after the telephone has been configured.

The directory and the call list can be accessed after the synchronisation period.

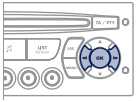
06 BLUETOOTH

RECEIVING A CALL

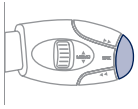
1 An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the vehicle's screen.

2 

Select the YES tab on the display using the buttons and confirm by pressing OK.



Press the steering mounted control to accept the call.



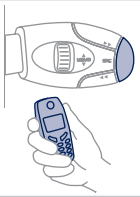
MAKING A CALL

1 From the Bluetooth telephone function Audio menu, select Manage the telephone call then Call, Call list or Directory.

2 Press the steering mounted control for more than two seconds for access to your directory, then navigate with the thumb wheel.

Or

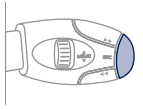
To dial a number, use your telephone's keypad, with the vehicle stationary.



ENDING A CALL

1 During a call, press the steering mounted control for more than 2 seconds.

Confirm with OK to end the call.



BLUETOOTH AUDIO STREAMING*

!

Wireless transmission of the telephone's music files via the audio equipment. The telephone must be able to manage the appropriate Bluetooth profiles (Profiles A2DP / AVRCP).

1

Initiate the pairing between the telephone and the vehicle. This pairing can be initiated from the vehicle's telephone function menu or via the telephone's keypad. See steps 1 to 9 on the previous pages. During the pairing phase, the vehicle must be stationary with the key in the ignition.



2

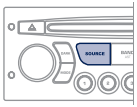
Select the telephone to be connected from the telephone function menu.

The audio system connects to a newly paired telephone automatically.

3



Activate the streaming source by pressing the SOURCE button**. The tracks to be played can be controlled as usual via the buttons on the audio system control panel and the steering mounted controls***. The contextual information can be displayed on the screen.



* Depending on the compatibility of the telephone.

** In certain cases, playing of the Audio files must be initiated from the keypad.

*** If the telephone supports the function.

07 SCREEN MENU MAP



MONOCHROME A

MAIN FUNCTION

- OPTION A
  - OPTION A1
  - OPTION A2
- OPTION B...

RADIO-CD

- RDS SEARCH
- REG MODE
- CD REPEAT
- RANDOM PLAY

VEHICLE CONFIG*

- REV WIPE ACT
- GUIDE LAMPS

* The parameters vary according to vehicle.

OPTIONS

- DIAGNOSTICS
  - CONSULT
  - ABANDON

07 SCREEN MENU MAP



UNITS

- TEMPERATURE: °CELSIUS / °FAHRENHEIT
- FUEL CONSUMPTION: KM/L - L/100 - MPG

DISPLAY ADJUST

- YEAR
- MONTH
- DATE
- HOUR
- MINUTES
- 12 H/24 H MODE

LANGUAGE

- FRANCAIS
- ITALIANO
- NEDERLANDS
- PORTUGUES
- PORTUGUES-BRASIL
- DEUTSCH
- ENGLISH
- ESPANOL

07 SCREEN MENU MAP

MONOCHROME C

Press the OK dial for access to short-cut menus according to the display on the screen:



RADIO

1 activate / deactivate RDS

1 activate / deactivate REG mode

1 activate / deactivate radiotext

CD / MP3 CD

1 activate / deactivate Intro

1 activate / deactivate track repeat (the entire current CD for CD, the entire current folder for MP3 CD)

1 activate / deactivate random play (the entire current CD for CD, the entire current folder for MP3 CD)

USB

1 activate / deactivate track repeat (of the current folder / artist / genre / playlist)

1 activate / deactivate random play (of the current folder / artist / genre / playlist)

07 SCREEN MENU MAP

MONOCHROME C

Pressing the MENU button displays:

AUDIO FUNCTIONS

- **FM BAND PREFERENCES**
  - **alternative frequencies (RDS)**
    - activate / deactivate
  - **regional mode (REG)**
    - activate / deactivate
  - **radio-text information (RDTXT)**
    - activate / deactivate
- **PLAY MODES**
  - **album repeat (RPT)**
    - activate / deactivate
  - **track random play (RDM)**
    - activate / deactivate

VEHICLE DIAGNOSTICS

- **ALERT LOG**

PERSONALISATION-CONFIGURATION

- **DEFINE THE VEHICLE PARAMETERS***
- **DISPLAY CONFIGURATION**
  - **video brightness adjustment**
    - normal video
    - inverse video
    - brightness (- +) adjustment
  - **date and time adjustment**
    - day/month/year adjustment
    - hour/minute adjustment
    - choice of 12 h / 24 h mode
  - **choice of units**
    - l/100 km - mpg - km/l
    - °Celsius / °Fahrenheit
- **CHOICE OF LANGUAGE**

* The parameters vary according to vehicle.





BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE

- **Bluetooth configuration**
  - **Connect/Disconnect a device**
  - **Telephone function**
  - **Audio Streaming function**
    - Consult the paired device
    - Delete a paired device
    - Perform a Bluetooth search
- **Call**
  - **Calls list**
    - Directory
- **Manage the telephone call**
  - **Terminate the current call**
  - **Activate private mode**

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - The audio equipment's CD player does not play DVDs. - Due to their quality level, certain writeable CDs will not be played by the audio system.
The message "USB peripheral error" is displayed on the screen. The Bluetooth connection is cut.	The battery of the peripheral may not be sufficiently charged.	Recharge the battery of the peripheral device.
	The USB memory stick is not recognised. The memory stick may be corrupt.	Reformat the memory stick.
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the BAND AST button to return to the waveband (AM, FM1, FM2, FMAST) on which the stations are stored.
The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.	The radio station is not part of the regional traffic information network.	Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for any frequency permitting better reception of the station.	Deactivate the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.
With the engine off, the audio equipment switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the audio equipment operating time depends on the battery charge. The switch-off is normal: the audio equipment switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.	In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio equipment switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction of the volume or stopping of the playing of the CD.	Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.

EXTERIOR



Remote control key.....83-86
- opening / closing
- anti-theft protection
- starting
- battery

Wiper controls.....105-107
Changing a wiper blade..... 211

Boot 92, 94
- opening / closing
- emergency release

Temporary puncture repair kit....178-183
Changing a wheel.....187, 192
- tools
- removing / refitting

Parking sensors.....167-168
Towbar.....214-215
Towing 211-212

Changing bulbs.....197-198
- rear lamps
- 3rd brake lamp
- number plate lamps

Accessories 217-218
Roof bars 216
Panoramic sunroof 95

Fuel tank, misfuel prevention.....96-98

Door mirrors.....80-81

Lighting controls 99-103
Directional lighting 104
Headlamp height adjustment.....103-104
Changing bulbs.....194-196
- front lamps
- foglamps
- direction indicator repeaters

Doors 91-93
- opening / closing
- central locking
- emergency control

Alarm 87-88
Electric windows.....89-90

Braking assistance 139
Trajectory control.....140
Tyre under-inflation detection 138
Tyre pressures..... 183, 241



EXTERIOR



Remote control key.....83-86
- opening / closing
- anti-theft protection
- starting
- battery

Accessories 217-218
Roof bars 216
Panoramic sunroof 95

Wiper controls.....105-107
Changing a wiper blade..... 211

Door mirrors.....80-81

Lighting controls 99-103
Directional lighting 104
Headlamp height adjustment.....103-104
Changing bulbs.....194-196
- front lamps
- foglamps
- direction indicator repeaters

Boot 92, 94
- opening / closing
- emergency release

Temporary puncture repair kit....178-186
Changing a wheel.....189, 192
- tools
- removing / refitting

Doors 91-93
- opening / closing
- central locking
- emergency release

Alarm 87-88
Electric windows.....89-90

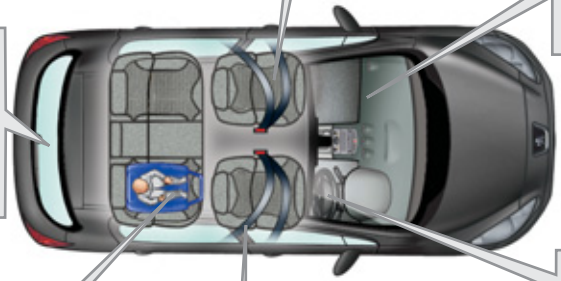
Parking sensors.....167-168
Towbar 214-215
Towing 213-214

Braking assistance 139
Trajectory control..... 140
Tyre under-inflation detection 138
Tyre pressures..... 183, 241

Changing bulbs.....199-200
- rear lamps
- 3rd brake lamp
- number plate lamps

Fuel tank, misfuel prevention.....96-98

INTERIOR



Front seats.....68-71
Rear seats 72-73

Interior fittings 110-115
- glove box
- ashtray / 12 V accessory socket
- mat

Boot fittings..... 116-117
- rear parcel shelf
- luggage retaining strap
- hooks
- stowing rings
- storage box

Airbags 146-149
Deactivating the passenger's front airbag.....147

Child seats.....125-128, 130
ISOFIX child seats.....131-134
Child lock 136

Seat belts.....141-142, 145

INTERIOR



Front seats.....68-71
Rear seats 72-73

Interior fittings 110-115
- glove box
- ashtray / 12 V accessory socket
- mat

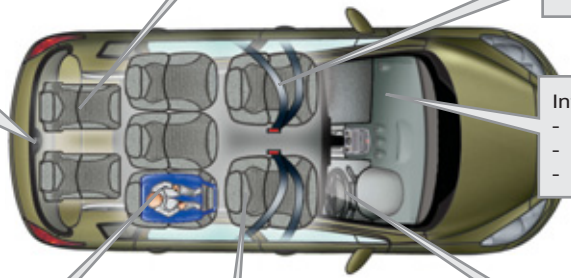
Boot fittings..... 118-120
- rear parcel shelf
- 12 V accessory socket
- hooks
- stowing rings
- high load retaining net
- retaining strap
- storage tray

Airbags 146-149
Deactivating the passenger's front airbag.....147

Child seats.....125-128, 130
ISOFIX child seats.....131-134
Child lock 136

Seat belts.....141-142, 145

INTERIOR



Additional seats 76-77
Seat modularity..... 78-79

Boot fittings..... 121-124
- load space screen
- 12 V accessory socket
- hooks
- stowing rings
- high load retaining net
- rear armrests
- retaining strap
- torch
- storage box

Seat belts..... 141-145

Interior fittings 110-115
- glove box
- ashtray / 12 V accessory socket
- mat

Child seats..... 125-127, 129-130
ISOFIX child seats..... 131-133, 135
Child lock..... 136
Side blinds..... 124

Airbags 146-149
Deactivating the passenger's front airbag..... 147

Front seats..... 68-71
Rear seats 74-75

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

Courtesy lamps....108
Seat belt / passenger's front airbag warning lamps display....142-143
Rear view mirror....82
Sun visor....111
Toll card / car park ticket windows....111

Lighting controls....99-103

Speed limiter....163-164
Cruise control....165-166

Peugeot Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D)...247-290
Peugeot Connect Navigation (RT6)...291-344
Peugeot Connect Sound (RD5)....345-364
Setting the date/time:
- Screen A (without Peugeot Connect Sound (RD5))....46
- Screen A....48
- Screen C....51
- Colour screen (with Peugeot Connect Navigation (RT6))....53
- Colour screen (with Peugeot Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D))....55

Dashboard fuses....201-203
Opening the bonnet....170

Multifunction screens....45-56
Hazard warning lamps....137
Switch panel....16
Emergency or assistance call...139, 243



Instrument panels....25-28
Warning lamps....29-38
Indicators....39-42
Buttons....43-44
- check / service indicator / trip distance recorder
- lighting dimmer

Wiper controls....105-107
Trip computer....57-60

Headlamp height adjustment....103-104
Stop & Start....160-162

Door mirrors....80-81
Electric windows....89-90

Steering wheel adjustment....82
Horn....137

Manual gearbox....150-152
Electronic gear control / automatic gearbox....153-156, 157-159
Parking brake....150

Ventilation....61-62, 65
Heating....63-64
Manual air conditioning....63-64
Digital air conditioning....66-67

TECHNICAL DATA - MAINTENANCE



Petrol engines.....219-227
Diesel engines.....228-239
Dimensions.....240
Identification markings.....241

Running out of fuel, Diesel 171

Checking levels 174-175
- oil
- brake fluid
- power steering fluid
- coolant
- screenwash/headlamp wash fluid
- additive (Diesel with particle emissions filter)

Changing bulbs.....194-200
- front
- rear

Battery 207-209
Energy economy mode.....210

Engine compartment fuses.....201, 204-206

Checking components.....176-177
- air filter
- passenger compartment filter
- oil filter
- particle emissions filter (Diesel)
- brake pads / discs

Opening the bonnet.....170
Under the bonnet, petrol.....172
Under the bonnet, Diesel.....173

A

ABS and EBFD systems 139
Accessories 217
Accessory socket, 12V 112, 123
Access to the 3rd row....74
Additional seats 76
Adjusting headlamps 103, 104
Adjusting head restraints....70
Adjusting seat belt height 141, 143
Adjusting the steering wheel 82
Airbag, knee 147, 149
Airbags, curtain 148, 149
Airbags, front 146, 149
Airbags, lateral 148, 149
Air conditioning....23
Air conditioning, digital 62, 66
Air conditioning, manual....62, 63
Air filter 176
Air flow....23
Air vents 61
Alarm 87
Alert / warning log 49, 52
Anti-lock braking system (ABS)....139
Anti-pinch....89, 95
Anti-theft 84
Armrest, front....113
Armrest, rear 115
Ashtray 112
Assistance call....139, 244
Athermic windscreen 111
Audible warning....137
Audio/video sockets 274
Audio streaming (Bluetooth)....330, 357
Audio systems 56
Automatic illumination of headlamps 99, 102, 103
Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps....137
Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers 105, 107
Auxiliary socket 331
Auxiliary sockets....274, 352, 354

B

Backup starting....208
Battery 176, 207-209
Battery, charging 207, 209
Battery, remote control 85, 86
Blind for panoramic sunroof 95
Blinds....124
Bluetooth (hands-free) 275-277, 314, 355
Bluetooth (telephone) 275-277, 314
Bonnet 170
Bonnet stay 170
Boot 94
Boot lamp 109, 124
Boot storage trays 118
Brake discs....177
Brake lamps 197, 199
Brake pads 177
Brakes 177
Braking assistance system....139

C

Capacity, fuel tank 96
CD MP3....351
Central locking....83, 92
Changing a bulb 194, 197, 199, 200
Changing a fuse 201
Changing a wheel....187, 189
Changing a wiper blade 107, 211
Changing the remote control battery....85
CHECK 43
Checking levels 174, 175
Checking the engine oil level 42
Checking tyre pressures (using the kit) 178
Checks....172, 173, 176, 177
Child lock 136
Children 128, 133-135
Child seats 125, 127, 130
Child seats, conventional 127
Closing the boot 83, 94
Closing the doors 83, 91
Cold climate screen....215
Colour screen, retractable 52, 54, 56
Connectors, audio 112, 352, 354
Control for panoramic sunroof blind 95
Coolant level....39, 174
Coolant temperature indicator....39
Courtesy lamps 108
Courtesy mirror....111
Cruise control 165
Cup holder....110

D

Date (setting) 45, 47, 49, 52, 54
Daytime running lamps..... 101, 194, 195
Deactivating the passenger airbag.....146
Deadlocking.....84
Defrosting 65
Dials and gauges.....25-27
Diesel additive level.....175
Dimensions.....240
Dipped beam 99, 194, 195
Dipstick.....42, 174
Directional lighting 104
Direction indicators..... 137, 194, 197, 199
Doors 91
Doors emergency control 93
Door trays.....110
Driving positions (memorising).....71

E

EBA (Emergency braking assistance).....139
Eco-driving 23
Eco-driving (advice).....23
Economical driving 23
Economy mode 210
Electric window controls.....89
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).....139
Electronic engine immobiliser.....84, 86
Emergency boot release 94
Emergency braking system.....139
Emergency call..... 139, 244, 245
Emergency warning lamps.....137
Energy economy mode 210
Engines.....219, 228
Engine, Diesel 97, 171, 173, 228
Engine, petrol 97, 172, 219
Engine compartment 172, 173
Engine compartment fusebox.....201
Engine oil level indicator 42, 174
Environment 23, 86
Equipment settings..... 45, 47, 49, 52, 54
ESP/ASR.....140

F

Filling with fuel.....96-98
Fitting a wheel 192
Fitting roof bars 216
Fittings, boot..... 116, 118, 121
Flashing indicators 137
Foglamps, rear 100
Folding the rear seats 72, 74, 76
Front foglamps 100, 194, 196
Front seats 68, 69, 71
Fuel.....23, 96, 97
Fuel consumption 23
Fuel filler cap 96
Fuel filler flap 96, 98
Fuel gauge 96
Fuel tank.....96, 98
Fusebox, dashboard.....201
Fuses.....201

G

G.P.S. 258, 300
Gearbox, automatic 157, 177
Gearbox, electronic gear control..... 153, 160, 177
Gearbox, manual..... 150, 151, 160, 177
Gear lever.....23
Gear lever, automatic gearbox 157
Gear lever, electronic gear control gearbox.....153
Gear lever, manual gearbox.....150
Gear shift indicator 151
Glove box 111
Grab handles.....110
Guidance 258, 298, 305

H

Halogen headlamps 194
Hands-free kit 314, 355
Hazard warning lamps.....137
Headlamp adjustment 103, 104
Headlamps, directional.....104, 194
Headlamp wash.....106
Headlamp wash reservoir.....174
Head restraints, front.....70
Head restraints, rear.....72
Heated seats 71
Heating 23, 63
Height and reach adjustment, steering wheel.....82
High load retaining net 120, 123
Hill start assist 152, 153
Hooks 117, 119, 123
Horn.....137

I

Identification plates....241
Ignition....85
Indicators, direction....137
Inflating accessories (using the kit)....178
Inflating tyres....23
Inputs for audio system....274, 331, 352, 354
Instrument panel lighting....44
Instrument panels....25-28, 43
Instrument panel screen....25-27, 151
Interior fittings....110
Interior mood lighting....109
ISOFIX child seats....131, 133-135
ISOFIX mountings....131

J

Jack....187, 189
JACK socket....331, 352
Jukebox (copy)....272
Jukebox (playing)....273

K

Keeping children safe....125, 128, 133-135, 146
Key in ignition warning....85
Key with remote control....83, 84, 86

L

Labels, identification....241
Lamps, warning and indicator....29, 33, 35, 38
LED daytime running lamps....101
Level, brake fluid....174
Level, headlamp wash....106, 174
Level, power steering fluid....174
Levels and checks....172-175
Lighting, guide-me home....102, 103
Lighting, interior....108, 109
Lighting bulbs (replacement)....194, 197, 199, 200
Lighting control stalk....99
Lighting dimmer....44
Lighting on reminder....100
Loading....23, 78, 216
Load reduction mode....210
Load space cover....119, 122
Locating your vehicle....84
Locking from the inside....92
Long objects, transporting....78, 115
Luggage retaining strap....116, 118, 121

M

Main beam....99, 194, 195
Maintenance....23
Map reading lamps....108
Markings, identification....241
Mat....114
Menu, main....348
Mini fuel level....96
Mirror, rear view....82
Mirrors, door....80, 81
Misfuel prevention....98
Modularity, seats....78
Mountings for ISOFIX seats....131
MP3 CD....351
Music media players....270, 326

N

Navigation....258, 297, 298
Net....122
Number plate lamps....197, 199

O

Oil filter....176
Oil level....42, 174
Opening the bonnet....170
Opening the boot....83, 94
Opening the doors....83, 91
Opening the panoramic sunroof blind....95
Opening the retractable screen....56
Operation indicator lamps....35, 38

P

Paint colour code....241
Panoramic glass sunroof....95
Parcel shelf, rear....117
Parking brake....150, 177
Parking sensors, front....168
Parking sensors, rear....167
Particle emission filter....175, 176

Passenger compartment filter 176
PEUGEOT call button 245
PEUGEOT CONNECT ASSISTANCE 244
Peugeot Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D) 28, 54, 58, 247, 250, 253, 280
Peugeot Connect Navigation (RT6).....52, 291
PEUGEOT CONNECT SOS 244, 245
Peugeot Connect Sound (RD5) 345, 358, 360
PEUGEOT services.....245
PIN code.....278
Player, CD MP3.....351
POIs (updating) 265
Port, USB 112, 352
Priming the fuel system.....171
Protecting children 125, 128, 133-135, 146
Puncture 178, 184

R

Radio 269, 323, 324, 349
RCA sockets.....274, 331
Reading lamps, rear.....108
Rear foglamp.....197, 199
Rear screen (demisting).....65
Recharging the battery.....207, 209
Reduction of electrical load 210
Reinitialising the electric windows.....89
Reinitialising the remote control 85
Remote control 83, 86
Removable screen (snow shield).....215
Removing a wheel.....192
Removing the mat 114
Repair kit, puncture 178, 184
Replacing bulbs..... 194, 197, 199, 200
Replacing fuses.....201
Replacing the air filter 176
Replacing the oil filter.....176
Replacing the particle emission filter....176
Replacing the passenger compartment filter 176
Replacing wiper blades 107, 211
Resetting the service indicator 41
Resetting the trip recorder.....43
Rev counter 25-27
Reversing lamp 197, 199
Risk areas (update).....265, 302
Roof bars.....216
Routine checks.....176, 177
Running out of fuel (Diesel).....171

S

Safety for children 89, 136
Screen, colour 16/9 .....253, 280
Screen, colour and mapping 295, 334
Screen, monochrome 348, 358, 360
Screen, monochrome C 58
Screen, multifunction (with audio equipment)..... 47, 49, 52, 54, 56
Screen, multifunction (without audio equipment) 45
Screen-wash reservoir 174
Screen menu map..... 280, 334, 358, 360
Screenwash, front 106
Screenwash fluid level.....106, 174
Seat adjustment 68, 69
Seat belts 127, 141, 143, 145
Seat configurations.....78
Seats, electric.....69
Seats, rear.....72, 74, 76
Serial number, vehicle 241
Service indicator.....40
Servicing.....23
Setting the clock 45, 47, 49, 52, 54
Short-cut menus 254, 296
Sidelamps..... 99, 101, 194, 195, 197, 199
Side repeater.....195
SIM card 278
Ski flap.....115
Snow chains 241
Spare wheel 187, 189
Spectacles storage.....110
Speed limiter 163
Speedometer.....25-27
Stability control (ESP) 140
Start.....208
Starting the vehicle..... 85, 153, 157
Steering mounted controls, audio 252, 347
Stopping the vehicle..... 85, 153, 157
Stop & Start..... 60, 66, 96, 160, 170, 176, 207
Storage.....110, 113, 115, 116, 118, 121
Storage box 113, 121
Storage drawer 114
Storage wells.....116
Storing driving positions 71
Stowing rings.....116, 118, 121
Sun visor 111, 124
Synchronising the remote control 85
Synthesiser, voice 308
System, navigation 258, 298
Systems, ASR and ESP 140

T

Table position 70, 74, 76
Tables, aircraft 115
Tables of engines 219, 228
Tables of fuses 201
Table of weights....219, 228
Tank, fuel 98
Technical data 219, 228, 240
Telephone 245, 275-277, 314, 318
Telephone, hands-free....275-277
Temperature, coolant....39
Temperature control for heated seats 71
Temporary tyre repair kit 178
Third brake lamp 197, 200
TMC (Traffic info)....267, 311
Toll/car park cards 111
Tools 187, 189
Torch....124
Total distance recorder....43
Towbar....214
Towed loads 219, 228
Towing another vehicle....211, 213
Traction control (ASR)....140
Traffic information (TA) 268, 312, 325, 350
Traffic information (TMC)....267, 268, 311, 312
Trailer 214
Trip computer 57, 58, 60
Trip distance recorder 43
Tyre pressures....241
Tyres....23
Tyre under-inflation detection....138

U

Under-inflation (detection)....138
Under floor storage....117
Unlocking....83
Unlocking from the inside....92
Update risk areas 265, 302
Updating POIs 265
USB (Peugeot Connect)....112, 352

V

Vehicle configuration 45, 47, 49, 52, 54
Vehicle diagnosis....49
Vehicle identification....241
Ventilation....61-63
Voice commands 250

W

Warning lamps....29, 33, 43
Wash-wipe, rear 106
Weights....219, 228
Welcome lighting 103, 109
Window controls 89
Windscreen zones for toll/car park cards 111
Wiper, rear....106
Wiper control stalk....105-107
Wipers 105, 107
Writing table....70

X

Xenon headlamps 194





This handbook describes all of the equipment available in the whole range.

Your vehicle will be fitted with some of this equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it is sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given without any obligation. Automobiles PEUGEOT reserves the right to modify the technical specifications, equipment and accessories without having to update the current handbook.

This document is an integral part of your vehicle. It should be passed on to the new user in the event of sale or transfer.

Automobiles PEUGEOT declares, by application of the provisions of the European regulation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this regulation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, competence and equipment required, which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this handbook is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles PEUGEOT.

Printed in the EU

Anglais

12-11

4Dconcept diadeis edipro

PEUGEOT

Automobiles PEUGEOT - Siège Social : 75, avenue de la Grande-Armée 75016 PARIS
Tél. 33 (0)1 40 66 55 11 - Fax 33 (0)1 40 66 54 14
Adresse postale : Automobiles PEUGEOT B.P 01 75761 PARIS cedex 16 - Adresse Internet : http://www.peugeot.com
Société Anonyme au capital de 171 284 850 Euros - R.C.S. PARIS B 552 144 503. SIRET 552 144 503 00018. APE 341 Z



www.peugeot.com

Anglais
AN. 12308.0030

Warning and indicator lamps

Visual indicators which inform the driver of the occurrence of a fault (warning lamp) or of the change of state of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lamp).

When the ignition is switched on

Certain warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

When the engine is started, these warning lamps should go off.

If they remain on, before moving off, refer to the explanation for the warning lamp concerned in the table below.

Associated warnings

The illumination, fixed or flashing, of certain warning lamps are accompanied by an audible signal.

Depending on your version of instrument panel, illumination of the warning lamp is also accompanied by:



- a message in the screen,

or



- a symbol in the central instrument panel screen and a message in the screen.

Warning lamps

When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, the illumination of one of the following warning lamps indicates a fault which requires action on the part of the driver.

! The illumination of a warning lamp is always accompanied by the display of an additional message, to assist you in identifying the fault.
If you encounter any problems, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Dynamic stability control (DSC/ASR)**	flashing.	The DSC/ASR regulation is operating.	The system optimises traction and improves the directional stability of the vehicle in the event of loss of grip or trajectory.
		fixed.	The DSC/ASR system has a fault.	Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Operation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has come into operation.
It may be accompanied by an audible signal.
Depending on your version of instrument panel, the illumination of the lamp is accompanied by:



- a message in the screen,

or



- a symbol in the central instrument panel screen and a message in the screen.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
ECO	**Stop & Start**	fixed.	When the vehicle stops (red lights, traffic jams, ...) the Stop & Start system has put the engine into STOP mode.	The warning lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically in START mode, as soon as you want to move off.
		flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.	STOP mode is temporarily unavailable. or START mode is invoked automatically.	For more information on special cases with STOP mode and START mode, refer to the "Stop & Start" section.

Deactivation warning lamps

If one of the following warning lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched off intentionally. This may be accompanied by an audible signal.

Depending on your version of instrument panel, illumination of the warning lamp is also accompanied by:



- a message in the screen,

or



- a symbol in the central instrument panel screen and a message in the screen.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	Passenger's front airbag	fixed in the instrument panel and/ or in the seat belt and front passenger's airbag warning lamps display.	The control switch, located on the passenger's end of the dashboard, is set to the **"OFF"** position. The passenger's front airbag is deactivated. You can install a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat.	To activate the front passenger's airbag, set the switch to the **"ON"** position; in this case, it is not possible to fit a child seat in the rear-facing position on this seat.

Service indicator

System which informs the driver when the next service is due, in accordance with the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

The point at which the service is due is calculated from the last indicator zero reset. It is determined by two parameters:

- the distance travelled,
- the time elapsed since the last service.



More than 1 800 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

When the ignition is switched on, no service information appears in the screen.

Between 600 miles (1 000 km) and 1 800 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the spanner symbolising the service operations comes on. The distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due.

Example: 1 700 miles (2 800 km) remain before the next service is due.

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner goes off**; the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. The screen then indicates the total and trip distances.



Less than 600 miles (1 000 km) remain before the next service is due

Example: 560 miles (900 km) remain before the next service is due.

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on** to indicate that a service must be carried out soon.



Service overdue

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner flashes** to indicate that the service must be carried out as soon as possible.

Example: the service is overdue by 180 miles (300 km).

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



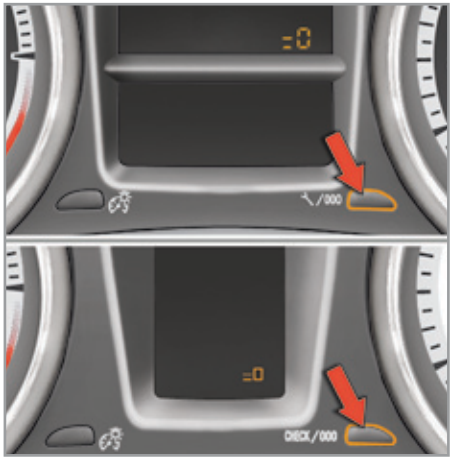
5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on**.



The distance remaining may be weighted by the time factor, depending on the driving conditions.

Therefore, the spanner may also come on if you have exceeded the period since the last service, indicated in the **servicing and warranty booklet**.

Service indicator zero reset



After each service, the service indicator must be reset to zero.

The procedure for resetting to zero is as follows:

- switch off the ignition,
- press and hold the **".../000"** button on the right of the instrument panel,
- switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,
- when the instrument panel central screen indicates **"=0"**, release the button; the spanner disappears from the screen.

Following this operation, if you wish to disconnect the battery, lock the vehicle and wait at least five minutes for the zero reset to be registered.

Retrieving the service information

You can access the service information at any time.

This information appears, depending on version, when running through the manual check procedure.

- Briefly press the **".../000"** button on the right of the instrument panel.

  The service information is displayed for a few seconds on the instrument panel central screen, then disappears.

Engine oil level indicator*



On versions fitted with an electric oil level indicator, the state of the engine oil level is displayed in the instrument panel for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, after the service information.

i The level shown will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

Oil level correct



Oil level low



This is signalled by the flashing of **"OIL"**, accompanied by the display of a message, illumination of the service warning lamp and an audible signal.

If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to prevent damage to the engine.

Refer to the corresponding section in "Checks.

Oil level indicator fault



This is signalled by the flashing of **"OIL--"** and the display of a message. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

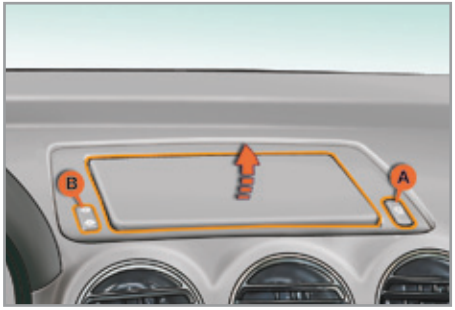
In the event of a fault with the electric indicator, the engine oil level is no longer monitored.

When the system has a fault, you should check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick (located under the bonnet).

Refer to the corresponding section in "Checks.

* Depending on version.

Access to the retractable screen



The screen opens automatically when the ignition is switched on. It closes automatically three seconds after switching off the ignition if the audio and telematics system is switched off.

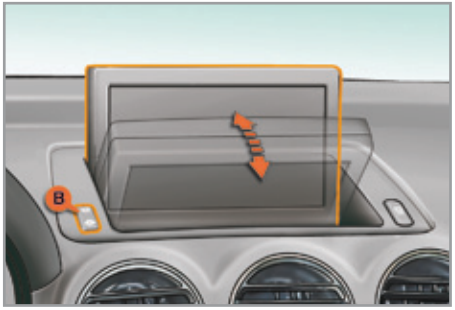
You can open or close the screen at any time, with the ignition on, using control **A**.

- Press button **A**: the screen folds.
- Press button **A** again: the screen opens again.

If you have closed the screen, it will open again automatically:

- on switching on the audio and navigation system (unless it had been closed manually while the system was in operation),
- when an outgoing telephone call is made,
- when a voice command is given,
- when a warning message linked with the STOP warning lamp is displayed (PEUGEOT Connect Navigation (RT6)).

Adjusting the angle of the screen



You can adjust the angle of the screen to one of four defined positions, by repeated presses on the front or back of the control **B**. The position of the screen is memorised on closing.

Lost keys

Go to a PEUGEOT dealer with the vehicle's registration document, your personal identification documents and if possible the key code label.

The PEUGEOT dealer will be able to look up the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key.

Remote control

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.

Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. You run the risk of stopping it from working and the remote control would have to be reinitialised.

No remote control can operate when the key is in the ignition switch, even when the ignition is switched off, except for reinitialisation.

Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.

As a safety precaution, never leave children alone in the vehicle, except for a very short period.

In all cases, it is essential to remove the key from the ignition switch when leaving the vehicle.

Anti-theft protection

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.

When purchasing a second-hand vehicle

Have the pairing of all of the keys in your possession checked by a PEUGEOT dealer, to ensure that only your keys can be used to open and start the vehicle.

Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment.

Take them to an approved collection point.

GENERAL POINTS RELATING TO CHILD SEATS

Although one of PEUGEOT main criteria when designing your vehicle, the safety of your children also depends on you.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- in accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings*,
- **statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats,**
- **a child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the "rearward facing" position both in the front and in the rear.**

PEUGEOT recommends that children should travel in the **outer rear seats** of your vehicle:

- **"rearward facing"** up to the age of 3,
- **"forward facing"** over the age of 3.

* The rules for carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT*



"Rearward-facing"

When a "rearward-facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the seat to the intermediate longitudinal and highest position, with the backrest straightened.

The passenger airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise, **the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were to inflate**.

Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.

For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in stable contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the passenger seat.

* Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing a child seat on this seat.



"Forward-facing"

When a "forward-facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to the intermediate longitudinal and highest position with seat backrest straightened and leave the passenger's airbag activated.

Passenger seat adjusted to the intermediate longitudinal position.



DEACTIVATING THE PASSENGER'S FRONT AIRBAG

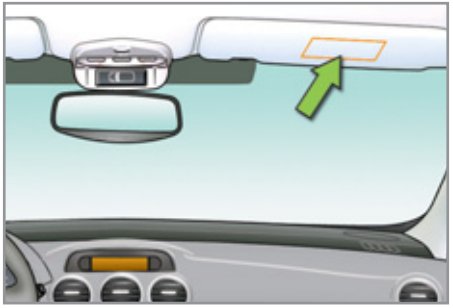
! Never install a rearward facing child restraint system on a seat protected by an active front airbag. This could cause the death of the child or serious injury.

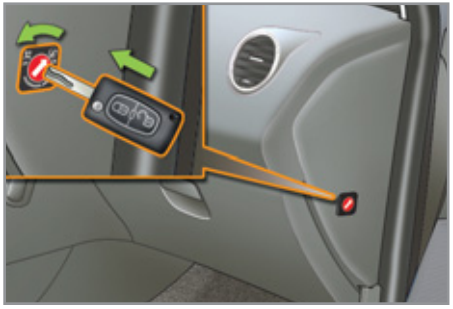
The warning label present on both sides of the passenger's sun visor repeats this advice. In line with current legislation, the following tables contain this warning in all of the languages required.



Passenger airbag OFF







i For information on deactivating the passenger's front airbag, refer to the "Airbags" section.

AR	لا يجب أبدا تركيب نظام لإجلاس الطفل الوجه باتجاه الوراء على مقعد سيارة مجهّز بوسادة أمان هوائية أمامية مفعّلة، فقد يؤدي هذا إلى التسبب بموت الطفل أو بإصابات خطيرة لديه .
BG	НИКОГА НЕ инсталирайте детско столче на седалка с АКТИВИРАНА предна ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА. Това можеда причини СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на детето.
CS	NIKDY neumisťujte dětské zádržné zařízení orientované směrem dozadu na sedadlo chráněné AKTIVOVANÝM čelním AIRBAGEM. Hrozí nebezpečí SMRTI DÍTĚTE nebo VÁŽNÉHO ZRANĚNÍ.
DA	Brug aldrig en bagudvendt barnestol på et sæde der er beskyttet af en aktiv airbag. Død eller alvorlig skade på barnet kan forekomme.
DE	Verwenden Sie NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder Babyschale gegen die Fahrtrichtung bei AKTIVIERTEM Airbag, TOD oder ERNSTHAFTE VERLETZUNGEN können die Folge sein.
EL	Μη χρησιμοποιείτε ΠΟΤΕ παιδικό κάθισμα με την πλάτη του προς το εμπρός μέρος του αυτοκινήτου, σε μια θέση που προστατεύεται από ΜΕΤΩΠΙΚΟ αερόσακο που είναι ΕΝΕΡΓΟΣ. Αυτό μπορεί να έχει σαν συνέπεια το ΘΑΝΑΤΟ ή το ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ του ΠΑΙΔΙΟΥ
EN	NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur
ES	NO INSTALAR NUNCA EL SISTEMA DE RETENCIÓN PARA NIÑOS DE ESPALDAS AL SENTIDO DE LA CIRCULACIÓN SOBRE UN ASIENTO PROTEGIDO CON UN COJÍN INFLABLE FRONTAL (AIRBAG) ACTIVADO. ESTO PUEDE CAUSAR LA MUERTE DEL BEBE O HERIRLO GRAVEMENTE.
ET	Ärge kasutage kunagi lapse turvatooli seljaga sõidusuunas sõiduki istmel mis on kaitstud AKTIVEERITUD TURVAPADJAGA. See võib põhjustada lapsele RASKEID VIGASTUSI või SURMA.
FI	ÄLÄ KOSKAAN aseta lapsen turvaistuinta selkä ajosuuntaan istuimelle, jonka edessä suojana on käyttöön aktivoitu TURVATYYNY. Sen laukeaminen voi aiheuttaa LAPSEN KUOLEMAN tai VAKAVAN LOUKKAANTUMISEN.
FR	NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVÉ. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT
HR	NIKADA ne postavljati dječju sjedalicu leđima u smjeru vožnje na sjedalo zaštićeno UKLJUČENIM prednjim ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM. To bi moglo uzrokovati SMRT ili TEŠKU OZLJEDU djeteta.
HU	SOHA ne használjon menetiránynak háttal beszerelt gyermekülést olyan ülésen, amely AKTIVÁLT ÁLLAPOTÚ (BEKAPCSOLT) FRONTLÉGZSÁKKAL van védve. Ez a gyermek halálát vagy súlyos sérülését okozhatja.
IT	NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.
LT	NIEKADA neįrenkite vaiko prilaikymo priemonės su atgal atgręžtu vaiku ant sėdynės, kuri saugoma VEIKIANČIOS priekinės ORO PAGALVĖS. Išsiskleidus oro pagalvei vaikas gali būti MIRTINAI arba SUNKIAI TRAUMUOTAS.
LV	NAV PIEĻAUJAMS uzstādīt uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdeklīti priekšējā pasažiera vietā, kurā ir AKTIVIZĒTS priekšējais DROŠĪBAS GAISA SPILVENS. Tas var izraisīt BĒRNA NĀVI vai radīt NOPIETNUS IEVAINOJUMUS.

MT	Qatt m'ghandek thalli tifel/tifla marbut f'siggu dahru lejn l-Airbag attiva, ghaliex tista' tikkawza korriment serju jew anke mewt lit-tifel/tifla
NL	Plaats NOOIT een kinderzitje met de rug in de rijrichting op een zitplaats waarvan de AIRBAG is INGESCHAKELD. Bij het afgaan van de airbag kan het KIND ERNSTIG OF DODELIJK GEWOND raken.
NO	Installer ALDRI et barnesete med ryggen mot kjøreretningen i et sete som er beskyttet med en frontal AKTIVERT KOLLISJONSPUTE, BARNET risikerer å bli DREPT eller HARDT SKADET.
PL	NIGDY nie instalować fotelika dziecięcego w pozycji «tyłem do kierunku jazdy»na siedzeniu wyposażonym w CZOŁOWĄ PODUSZKĘ POWIETRZNĄ w stanie AKTYWNYM.W przeciwnym razie dziecko narażone będzie na ŚMIERĆ lub BARDZO POWAŻNE OBRAŻENIA CIAŁA w momenicie wyzwolenia poduszki powietrznej
PT	NUNCA instale um sistema de retenção para crianças de costas para a estrada, num banco protegido por um AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO. Esta instalação poderá provocar FERIMENTOS GRAVES ou a MORTE da CRIANÇA.
RO	Nu instalati NICIODATA un sistem de retinere pentru copii, dispus cu spatele in directia de mers, pe un loc din vehicul protejat cu AIRBAG frontal ACTIVAT. Aceasta ar putea provoca MOARTEA COPILULUI sau RANIREA lui GRAVA.
RU	ВО ВСЕХ СЛУЧАЯХ ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ использовать обращенное назад детское удерживающее устройство на сиденье, защищенном ФУНКЦИОНИРУЮЩЕЙ ПОДУШКОЙ БЕЗОПАСНОСТИ, установленной перед этим сиденьем. Это может привести к ГИБЕЛИ РЕБЕНКА или НАНЕСЕНИЮ ЕМУ СЕРЬЕЗНЫХ ТЕЛЕСНЫХ ПОВРЕЖДЕНИЙ
SK	NIKDY nepoužívajte na prednom sedadle chránenom AKTÍVNYM AIRBAGOM detské zadržiavacie zariadenie umiestnené v proti smere jazdy. Môže to spôsobiť SMRŤ, alebo VÁŽNE ZRANENIE DIEŤAŤA.
SL	NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega sedeža s hrbtom v smeri vožnje, če je VARNOSTNA BLAZINA pred sprednjim sopotnikovim sedežem AKTIVIRANA. Takšna namestitev lahko povzroči SMRT OTROKA ali HUDE POŠKODBE.
SR	NIKADA ne koristite dečje sedište koje se okreće unazad na sedištu zaštićenim AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, jer mogu nastupiti SMRT ili OZBILJNA POVREDA DETETA.
SV	Använd ALDRIG en bakåtvänd barnstol i ett säte skyddat av en AKTIV AIRBAG framför det. Det kan orsaka ALLVARLIGA eller DÖDLIGA skador på barnet.
TR	KESİNLKLE HAVA YASTIĞI AKTİF olan ön koltuğa yüzü arkaya dönük bir çocuk koltuğu yerleştirmeyiniz. Bu ÇOCUĞUN ÖLMESİNE veya ÇOK AĞIR YARALANMASINA sebep olabilir.

CHILD SEATS RECOMMENDED BY PEUGEOT

PEUGEOT offers a complete range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three point seat belt**.

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



L1
"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus"
Installed in the rearward facing position.

Groups 1, 2 and 3: from 9 to 36 kg



L2
"KIDDY Comfort Pro"
The impact shield must be used for carrying young children (from 9 to 18 kg).

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg



L4
"KLIPPAN Optima"
From approxmately 6 years (from 22 kg), the booster is used on its own.



L5
"RÖMER KIDFIX"
Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings.
The child is restrained by the seat belt.

TRAJECTORY CONTROL SYSTEMS

Anti-slip regulation (ASR) and dynamic stability control (DSC)

The anti-slip regulation (also known as traction control) optimises traction to prevent skidding of the wheels, by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine.

The electronic stability control acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to keep the vehicle on the trajectory required by the driver, within the limits of the laws of physics.

Activation

These systems are activated automatically each time the vehicle is started.

They come into operation in the event of a grip or trajectory problem.

This is indicated by flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel.



Deactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground, ...), it may be advisable to deactivate the ASR and DSC systems, so that the wheels can move freely and regain grip.

☞ Press this button, located in the middle of the dashboard.

Illumination of the indicator lamp in the button indicates that the ASR and DSC systems are deactivated.

Reactivation

These systems are reactivated automatically each time the ignition is switched back on or from 30 mph (50 km/h).

☞ Press this button again to reactivate them manually.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, this indicates a malfunction of these systems.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The ASR/DSC systems offer exceptional safety in normal driving, but this should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

The correct functioning of these systems depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations on:

- wheels (tyres and rims),
- braking components,
- electronic components,
- repair and assembly procedures.

After an impact, have these systems checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

AIRBAGS

System designed to maximise the safety of the occupants (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of violent collisions. The airbags supplement the action of the force-limiting seat belts (with the exception of the centre rear passenger).

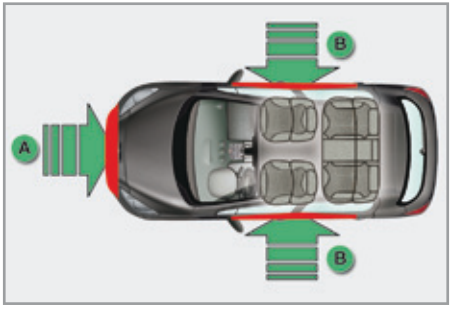
If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the case of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and contribute towards better protection of the occupants of the vehicle (with the exception of the rear centre passenger); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain roll-over conditions, the airbags will not be deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards ensuring your protection in these situations.

! The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

Impact detection zones



A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

i Deployment of the airbag(s) is accompanied by a slight emission of smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

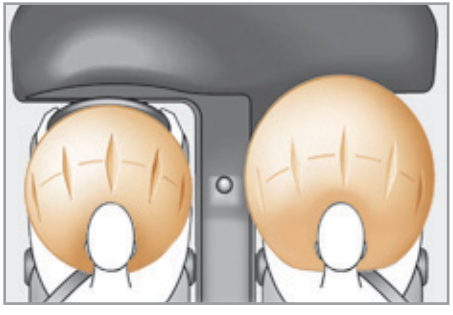
This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation.

The noise of the detonation may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front airbags

System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the head and thorax.

The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.



Deployment

The airbags are deployed, except the passenger's front airbag it it has been deactivated, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.

The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side to cushion their forward movement.

GEAR SHIFT INDICATOR

System which reduces fuel consumption by advising the driver to change up.

Operation

Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one (or more) gear(s). You can follow this instruction without engaging the intermediate gears.

The gear engagement recommendations must not be considered compulsory. In fact, the configuration of the road, the amount of traffic and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the advice given by the system.

This function cannot be deactivated.

Example:

- You are in third gear.
- You press the accelerator pedal.
- The system may suggest that you engage a higher gear.



The information appears in the instrument panel in the form of an arrow.

i On vehicle fitted with a manual gearbox, the arrow may be accompanied by the gear recommended.

i The system adapts its gear change recommendation according to the driving conditions (slope, load, ...) and the demands of the driver (power, acceleration, braking, ...).

The system never suggests:

- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse gear,
- engaging a lower gear.

i With an electronic or automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual mode.

CHECKING LEVELS

Check all of these levels regularly, in line with the warranty and maintenance record. Top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated.

If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Engine oil level

The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel for vehicles with and electric oil level gauge, or using the dipstick.

To ensure that the reading is correct, your vehicle must be parked on a level surface and the engine having been off for more than 30 minutes.

i It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). PEUGEOT recommends that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3 000 miles (5 000 kms).

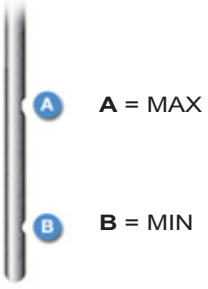
Checking using the dipstick

Refer to the "Petrol engine" or "Diesel engine" section for the location of the dipstick in the engine compartment of your vehicle.

☞ Take the dipstick by its coloured grip and remove it completely.

☞ Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean non-fluffy cloth.

☞ Refit the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to make the visual check: the correct level is between the marks **A** and **B**.



A = MAX

B = MIN

If you find that the level is above the **A** mark or below the **B** mark, **do not start the engine**.

- If the level is above the **MAX** mark (risk of damage to the engine), contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
- If the level is below the **MIN** mark, you must top up the engine oil.

Oil grade

Before topping-up the oil or changing the oil, check that the oil is the correct grade for your engine and conforms to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Topping up the engine oil level

Refer to the "Petrol engine" or "Diesel engine" section for the location of the oil filler cap in the engine compartment of your vehicle.

- ☞ Unscrew the oil filler cap to reveal the filler aperture.
- ☞ Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
- ☞ Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- ☞ Add more oil if necessary.
- ☞ After checking the level, carefully refit the oil filler cap and the dipstick in its tube.

i After topping up the oil, the check when switching on the ignition with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel is not valid during the 30 minutes after topping up.

Engine oil change

Refer to the warranty and maintenance record for details of the interval for this operation.

In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emission control system, the use of additives in the engine oil is prohibited.

Screenwash and headlamp wash fluid



In the case of vehicles fitted with headlamp washers, the low fluid level is indicated by an audible signal and a message in the instrument panel screen.

Top up the reservoir when you next stop the vehicle.

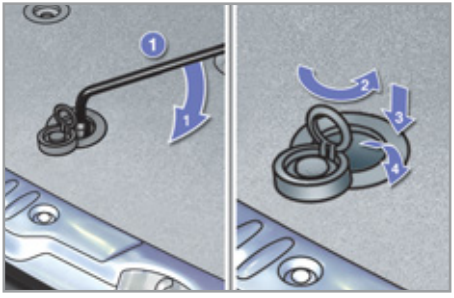
Fluid specification

For optimum cleaning and to avoid freezing, this fluid must not be topped up with or replaced with plain water.

In wintry conditions, the use of an ethyl alcohol or methanol base fluid is recommended.

PUTTING THE WHEEL BACK IN PLACE

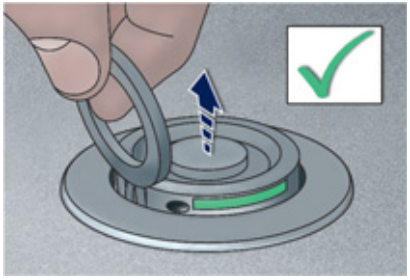




- Fully tighten the nut.
- Using the eyelet, turn the cap to lock the winch.

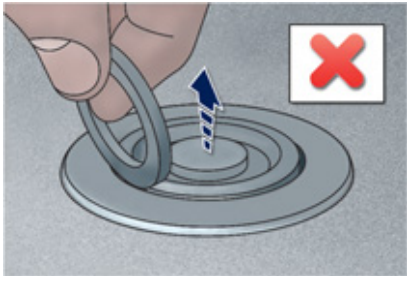
! Before folding the eyelet, you should ensure by visual inspection (during the year), that the wheel fixing system is correctly fitted.

- Pull the eyelet upwards, without force, to check the position of the cap.



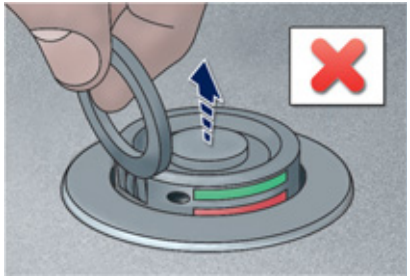
If the green mark is visible, the fixing system is locked correctly.

- Fold the eyelet.



If the mark is not visible, the fixing system is not locked correctly.

- Remove the cap and tighten the nut.
- Replace the cap and repeat the check.



If the red mark is visible, even slightly, the fixing system is not locked correctly.

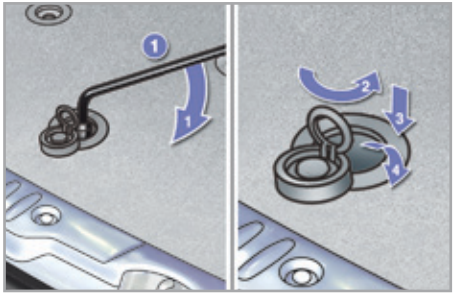
- Remove the cap and tighten the nut.
- Replace the cap and repeat the check.

i Ensure that the wheel is held horizontally against the floor.

AN. 12308.A040

Putting the wheel back in place

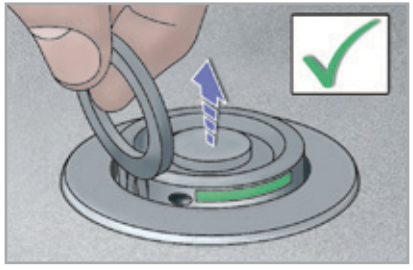




- Fully tighten the nut.
- Using the eyelet, turn the cap to lock the winch.

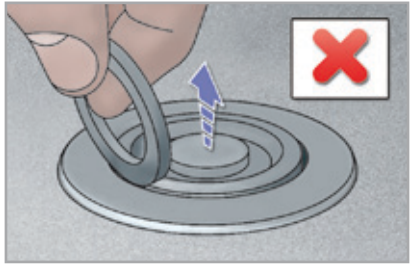
! Before folding the eyelet, you should ensure by visual inspection, that the wheel fixing system is correctly fitted.

- Pull the eyelet upwards, without force, to check the position of the cap.



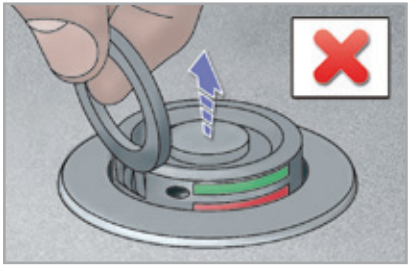
If the green mark is visible, the fixing system is locked correctly.

- Fold the eyelet.



If the mark is not visible, the fixing system is not locked correctly.

- Remove the cap and tighten the nut.
- Replace the cap and repeat the check.



If the red mark is visible, even slightly, the fixing system is not locked correctly.

- Remove the cap and tighten the nut.
- Replace the cap and repeat the check.

i Ensure that the wheel is held horizontally against the floor.